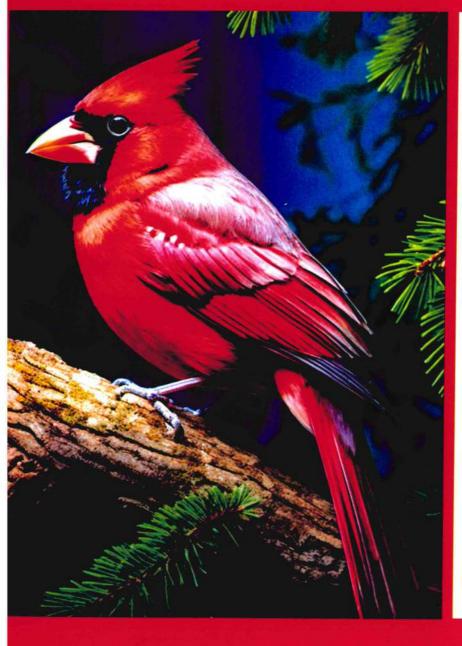


CONNECT Plus







By a group of specialists

Contents

	Contents	
Part	Theme 3: My society	
$\overline{}$	Unit (5) Hobbies and free-time activities	3
	Unit (5) Test (1)	46
	Unit (6) My wonderful city	49
	Unit (6) Test (2)	94
	Review 3: Review Test (3)	97
	Theme 4: I'm a responsible person	
	Unit (7) Good advice	100
	Unit (7) Test (4)	146
	Unit (8) People who help us	149
	Unit (8) Test (5)	192
Saya Kabu	Review 4: Review Test (6)	195
Part		
2	Non-Fiction Reader	
	The Bedouin Tribes of the Desert	198
	Fiction Reader	
	Granddad's Village	212
Part		
3	Listening Scripts	231

Theme (3) My society

Unit 5

Hobbies and free-time activities

الهوايات وأنشطة أوقات الفرافي



In this unit I will

- * talk about hobbies and free-time activities.
- identify, understand, and use verbs + -ing.
- use pie charts to make comparisons.
- read and understand a poem about hobbies.
- learn about free-time activities in Ancient Egypt.
- write an email to a friend.
- read and understand a story about a camping trip.

Objectives

Vocabulary

Free-time activities and collocations: do arts and crafts, go camping, go hiking, go skiing,

have a picnic, make new friends, play sports, put on sunscreen, put up a tent, record a video

Free-time activities in Ancient Egypt: archery, boxing, a chariot race, a board game,

fishing, hunting, wrestling

Adjectives: awesome, cool, gorgeous

Camping: campfire, drop a pin on a map, guide, picnic table, (phone) reception, trail

Language

- I enjoy spending time outside.
- They hate eating onions on their burgers.
- Swimming is more popular than painting.
- Swimming is the most popular activity.
- We love going to the beach.
- Do you like watching TV? Yes, I do.
- Reading A children's magazine article about hobbies; blogs about free-time activities; a
 poem about hobbies; a story about free-time activities in Ancient Egypt; a story
 about a camping trip
- Writing Preparing pie charts to show the results of a survey; writing a verse of a poem; organizing, planning, and writing an email to a friend
- Speaking Talking about free-time activities; asking and answering questions for a survey; comparing the results of a survey
- Listening A classroom survey; a discussion about the results of a survey

Life skills Resilience: the importance of working together Self-management: learning to be part of a team

Values Cooperation and respect

Issues and challenges - Social participation

- Environmental responsibility

Integrated cross-curriculum topics History: free-time activities in Ancient Egypt

-Lesson 1 Favorite sports and hobbies

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





have free time لديه وقت فراغ



do hobbies پمارس هوایات



do arts and crafts بيمارس الفنون والحرف اليدوية إ



do origami يمارس فن قص وتشكيل الورق



go camping دنهب للتخييم



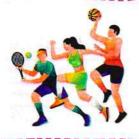
go hiking يذهب في نزهة سيرًا على الأقدام



go skiing يذهب للتزلج على الجليد



go swimming يذهب للسباحة



play sports تلعب ریاضات



play football يلعب كرة القدم



have a picnic يقوم بنزهة خلوية



put on sunscreen بيضع كريم واقي من الشمس/



put up a tent ينصب خيمة



record a video پُسَجِّل ڤيديو



make new friends يُكَوِّن أصدقاء جُدد



spend time يقضي وقت



,	Extra Vocabulary	كلمات إضافية		
magazine	مجلة	green spaces	مساحات خضراء	
popular	مشهور - محبوب - شائع	space rockets	صواريخ فضائية	
team sport	رياضة جماعية	best friend	أقرب صديق - أعز صديق	
trip	رحلة	warm	دافمأ	
indoors	داخل مبنی - بالداخل	outdoors	خارج مبنی - بالخارج	

Expressions & Prepositions

busy with my schoolwork مشغول بأعمالي المدرسية

around the world حول العالم **get wet** يبتل

work in a group يعمل في مجموعة worry about يقلق بشأن free-time activities أنشطة أوقات الفراغ

post online ينشر عبر الإنترنت

get better يتحسّن **tell stories** پروپ قصص **get sick** يمرض

بلاد وأماكن Countries & Places

Egypt (Capital: Cairo)	مصر (العاصمة: القاهرة)	Colombia	كولومبيا
Norway	النرويج	Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية
Canada	كندا	Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

crigami: a craft from Japan, and you use paper to make the shapes of animals, space rockets, or almost anything

Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

P	resent	Past	A PP
ask	يسأل	asked	asked
answer	يُجِيب	answered	answered
play	يلعب	played	played
rain	تُمْطِر تُمْطِر	rained	rained
want	يريد - يرغب	wanted	wanted
record	يُسَجِّل	recorded	recorded
post	يَنْشُر	posted	posted
like	يُعْجَب بـ - يحب	liked	liked
use	يَسْتَخْدِه	used	used
change	يتغيّر	changed	changed
worry	يقلق	worried	worried

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	A PP
be (am - is - are)	يكون	was - were	been
do	يفعل	did	done
put	يضع	put	put
make	يصنع - يجعل	made	made
meet	يقابل	met	met
spend (time)	یقضی (وقت)	spent (time)	spent (time)
go	يذهب	went	gone
know	يَعْرِف	knew	known
get sick	يمرض	got sick	got sick
feel	یشعر - یحس	felt	felt
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
show	يعرض	showed	shown



People who have hobbies are happier and more **relaxed**. Hobbies can also make you more creative.



الناس الذين يكون لديهم هوايات يكونون أكثر سعادة وأكثر استرخاءً، كما أن الهوايات يمكن أن تجعلك أكثر إبداعًا.



Read and learn



Kids Club Magazine: Hobbies around the world

We asked children around the world to answer the question, "What do you do in your free time o?" Here are some of their answers.

Amil

Many sports are popular on in my country, but the most popular sport is football. I play football with my friends on a team. The only problem is that the sun is very strong here in Cairo. So, I

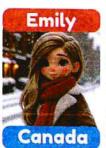
always put on sunscreen 6 before I play a football match. For me, the best part about playing a team sport 6 is when I make new friends 6. That's how I met my best friend, Fares. We met playing football.

- 🕡 وقت فراغ
- 👩 مشهورة شائعة
- 쥥 كريم واقي من الشمس
 - 🚯 ریاضة جماعیة
 - 😉 أُكَوِّن أصدقاء جدد
 - (6) نذهب للتخييم
 - 🕜 تنصب خيمة
- 3 نذهب في نزهات سيرًا على الأقدام
- 🧿 نذهب للتزلج على الجليد

Sofie

People in my country like to spend their free time outside, and I do, too. My family and I go camping @ a lot in the summer, so it's very important to know how to put up a tent @! The weather can change very fast in Norway, and you don't want to get wet — especially if it's cold out. We also go hiking @ all

summer, and then in the winter, we go skiing o down the mountains. I feel very happy when I spend time in the mountains.



There are a lot of different ways that people spend their free time here in Canada. When it's warm out, people have a picnic time here in Canada. When it's warm out, people have a picnic time here in Canada. When it's warm out, people have a picnic time here in Canada. When it's warm out, people have a picnic time the park. We have a lot of green spaces to in my city, but the only problem is that it rains a lot. So, when it's raining, I go swimming. The pool is indoors, so we don't have to worry about the rain or even the very cold winters which we have here.

Daniel

I don't have a lot of free time because Iamverybusywithmyschoolwork. Butwhen I do have free time, I do arts and crafts . Doyouknoworigami®? This is a craft which is from Japan, and you use paper to make the shapes of animals, space rockets, or

🔞 نزهة خلوية

🕦 مساحات خضراء

🔞 أمارس الفنون

🚯 فن قص وتشكيل الورق

🕐 نسجل ڤيديو

والحرف اليدوية

😈 ننشره

almost anything. It's not very popular here in Colombia where I live, but my friends and I like it a lot. Sometimes we record a video and post it online to show other people how to make our favorite origami animals.

Activity Book Text

Hi, my name's Seleem. Every year, my family go camping in the Siwa Oasis on the Western Desert of the first time. It's really hot in the desert, so we always put on sunscreen during the day! My little sister likes to help Dad put up the tent, but she can't do it. She's only four! We sometimes go hiking in the early morning because it's cooler of there are also places where we can go swimming. We always take a lot of water to drink, and we usually have a picnic for lunch. In the evening, we cook dinner of on a fire. This is my favorite part of the day. I like looking at the stars of in the night sky while Dad tells us stories of the stars.



- 🕦 واحة سيوة
- 🙆 الصحراء الغربية
 - 👩 رحلة
- 🕜 أبرد 5) نطهو العشاء
 - 🜀 النجوم
- 🕢 پروپ لنا قصصًا



The Lesson Notes

متلازمات لفظية Collocations

go - play - do - have - make - put up - put on - record - spend

(go - play - do - have - make - put up - put on - record - spend) لاحظ استخدام الأفعال في التعبيرات الآتية:

go

🏲 go skiing پذهب للتزلج علم الجليد 🕨 go skiing

يذهب للسباحة

play

🏲 play sports پلعب رياضات 🕨 play football

يلعب كرة القدم

do

do hobbies

يمارس هوايات

do origami

يمارس فن قص وتشكيل الورق

do arts and crafts

يمارس الفنون والحرف اليدوية

have

have free time لديه وقت فراغ ト have a picnic

يقوم بنزهة خلوية

make

make new friends

يُكَوِّن أصدقاء جُدد

put up

put up a tent

ينصب خيمة

put on

put on sunscreen

يضع كريم واقي من الشمس



Unit 5 record record a video spend spend time Remember تذكر We use the verb (go) with the (ing) activities and sports. 🛄 نستخدم الفعل (go) مع الأنشطة والرياضات المنتهية يـ (ing): go swimming - go cycling - go shopping - go fishing We use the verb (play) with the (ball games). 🛄 نستخدم الفعل (play) مع الرياضات التي تُلْعَب بالكرة:

We use the verb (do) with the other games.

Exercises on Lesson

do karate - do judo

🛄 نستخده الفعل (do) مع بقية الرياضات:

play basketball - play tennis - play volleyball - play handball

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

do - popular - make - play - put on

I like sports very much. Many sports are 0 in my country, but the most popular sport is football. I @ football with my friends on a team. The only problem is that the sun is very strong here in Cairo. So, I always 6 sunscreen before I play a football match. For me, the best part about playing a team sport is when I @ _____ new friends. That's how I met my best friend, Fares. We met while playing football.

10

يُسَجِّل قيديو

يقضى وقت



Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

craft - record - have - free time - do

Hatem : Hello, Daniel. How are you?

Daniel: Hello, Hatem. Fine, I hope you are, too.

Daniel: I don't have much free time because I am very busy with my

schoolwork.

Hatem : What do you do when you have some free time?

Daniel: 1 @ arts and crafts. Do you know origami?

Hatem: No, I don't.

Daniel : This is a 6 from Japan, and you use paper to make

the shapes of animals, space rockets, or almost anything.

Hatem: What else do you do when you have free time?

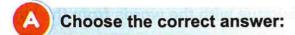
Daniel : Sometimes I @ a video and post it online to

show other people my origami works.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions:



Hi, my name's Seleem. Every year, my family goes camping in the Siwa Oasis in the Western Desert. This year, I recorded a video of our trip for the first time. It's really hot in the desert, so we always put on sunscreen during the day! My little sister likes to help Dad put up the tent... but she can't do it. She's only four! We sometimes go hiking in the early morning because it's cooler. There are also places where we can go swimming. We always take a lot of water to drink, and we usually have a picnic for lunch. In the evening, we cook dinner on a fire. This is my favorite part of the day. I like looking at the stars in the night sky while Dad tells us stories. It's fun!



- Seleem likes (swimming putting up the tent cooking on a fire hiking)
 in the early morning.
- 2. They cook dinner in the (morning evening noon afternoon).
- Answer these questions:
 - 3. Where does Seleem's family go camping every year?
 - 4. Why can't Seleem's sister help Dad put up the tent?
- Complete the email with the correct verbs:



go - go - go - have - make - put on - put up - record

I'm on vacation with my family in Dahab, near the Red Sea. We always

camping in the summer. I love sleeping under the stars. I usually help my dad to

the tent. The beaches are amazing. We

swimming in the sea every day. The water is so warm. The sun's really hot, though. You have to

a picnic on the beach. Mom takes all our favorite food. I always

new friends on vacation, too. I met some children from Cairo, and they're camping near us. We're going to

hiking tomorrow in the mountains. We plan to

videos with our phones! I hope you're enjoying your vacation, too. Bye, for now,

Lara



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences
rut the words in the correct order to make sentences

- 1. popular most Football sport the is.
- 2. summer We camping go in the.
- 3. and crafts you arts Do do?
 -
- 4. activity free-time What like *you do?
-?
- Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"How do I spend my free time?"

ldeas to help you: sports - arts and crafts - picnic - camping - hiking















Lesson 2 I like going to the beach

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





free time وقت فراغ



going to the beach الذهاب للشاطئ



reading a book قراءة كتاب



having ice cream تَنَاوُل الآيس كريم



staying home البقاء في المنزل



watching a movie مشاهدة فيلم



hiking in the mountains adventure ممارسة رياضة المشي في الجبال





blog مدوّنة إلكترونيّة

a,'	1	🕇 مغامرة	1
1	·		-

			- Xira Vocabulary and a digital digital		
	computer games	ألعاب الكمبيوتر	grandparents	أجداد	
	burger	برجر	cousins	أولاد عم (خال - عمة - خالة)	
)	onions	بصل	the same age	نفس العمر	
	For example	علم سبيل المثال	job	وظيفة	
1				The state of the s	

Activity Book

language	لغة	snack	وجبة خفيفة
emails	رسائل بريد إلكتروني	shopping	التسوُّق
newspaper	جريدة - صحيفة	at the market	في السوق

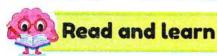
Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

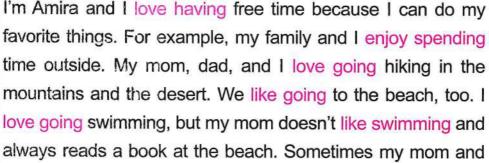
	Present	Past	PP A
enjoy	یستمتع ب	enjoyed	enjoyed
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
paint	یلون - یدهن	painted	painted
dance	يرقص المسلم المسلم	danced	danced
hate	یکرَه	hated	hated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

	Present	Past	PP A
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
do	يفعل - يؤدي	did	done
write	يكتب	wrote	written
have	يملك - عنده - لديه	had	had
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
take	يأخذ	took	taken
run	يجري	ran	run
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
grow	يزرع - ينمو	grew	grown
read	يقرأ	read	read



Amira's Blog







I record a video at the beach to send to my grandparents. They love seeing our adventures. We sometimes have a picnic together at the beach, too. My brother is different. He hates going to the beach, so he doesn't usually come with us. And he doesn't like going camping with us. He's 22 and he has a job, but he enjoys staying home and reading a book or watching a movie.

Younis's Blog

I'm Younis and I love spending my free time with my cousins. I'm ten, my cousin Maged is nine, and his brother Waleed is 11. We enjoy doing a lot of different things together because we're almost the same age. For example, we love playing computer games on Saturday.





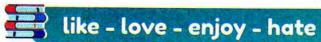
We also like having dinner together. My parents usually take us to have a burger. I have mine with everything on it, but my cousins don't have any onions — they hate eating onions on their burgers. Sometimes my aunt and uncle take us to have ice cream. I love eating ice cream, but I don't like putting chocolate on my ice cream. My cousins love putting chocolate on theirs!



16

Step Ahead

Grammar Study 🎎



After the verbs (like - love - enjoy - hate ... etc), we can add a (verb + -ing).

لاحظ أن الأفعال (like - love - enjoy - hate) سواءً في حالة الإثبات أو النفي تُتبع بـ (verb + -ing).

Examples:

- I enjoy spending time outside.
- They hate eating onions on their burgers.
- ► He doesn't like going camping. ► I don't enjoy playing video games.
- We like going to the beach. ► I love having free time.
- If a verb ends in a consonant + (e), take away the (e) and add (-ing):

إذا انتهم الفعل بالحرف (e) وقبله حرف ساكن، نحذف الـ (e) ونضيف (ing-).

Examples:

- We like having dinner together.
- I love going hiking in the mountains.
- For verbs that end in a vowel and then a consonant, write the last letter twice and add (-ing):

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن قبله حرف متحرك، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ونضيف (ing-).

Examples:

- I don't like putting chocolate on my ice cream.
- ▶ I love going swimming.



Exercises on Lesson (2)



Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

enjoys - watching - hates - reading - don't like

My brother Ramy is different from me. He o going to the beach, so he doesn't usually come with us. And he doesn't like going camping with us. He's 22 and he has a job, but he o staying home and o a book or o a movie.

Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

mountains - hiking - spending - picnic - beach

Fayza: Do you love having free time, Amira?

Amira: Yes. I love having free time because I can do my favorite things.

Fayza: Like what?

Amira : For example, my family and I enjoy 0 time

outside.

Fayza: What do you do outside?

Amira : My mom, dad, and I love going hiking in the @

and the desert.

Fayza: Do you do any other activities outside?

Amira: Yes. We like going to the swimming, but my mom doesn't like swimming and always reads a book at the beach. We sometimes have a

o together at the beach, too.

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I love (has have having had) free time.
- 2. They enjoy (spend spends spent spending) time outside.

- 4. Mom doesn't like (swimming swims swam swim).
- 5. He enjoys (stay stayed staying stays) home and reading a book.
- 6. She doesn't like (go going goes gone) camping with us.
- 7. They enjoy (do does done doing) a lot of different things together.
- 8. We don't like (has having had have) dinner outside.
- They hate (eating ate eaten eat) onions on their burgers.
- Younis loves (to spending spend spending spends) his free time with his cousins.
- 11. I don't like (put puts putting to putting) chocolate on my ice cream.
- 12. He hates (going go goes to going) to the beach, so he doesn't usually come with us.

4	Put the	words in	the	correct	order t	to make	sentences:
---	---------	----------	-----	---------	---------	---------	------------

1. camping - We - in - love - desert - the.	
2. age - almost - are - We - the - same.	
3. watching - adventures - they - Do - like - our?	>
4. spending - enjoy - my family - time - with - I.	>

5 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Magda:

Tell her what you like doing and what you don't like doing. Your email address is samar@yahoo.com, and your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:mail

From:	
To:	
Subject:	

Connect Plus 5 | 19



Lessons 3-4 What do you like doing in your free time?

Do you like reading poems?



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



interview (v) يستضيف في مقابلة



classmate زمیل فی الفصل



dessert تحلية (الحلو بعد الأكل)



recipes وصفات طهي



result / نتیجة



section جزء



survey استطلاع رأي



countryside الريف



poem قصیدة



verses أبيات القصيدة



rhyme قافیة



creative مبدع - مبتکِر

Extra	Vocabulary	مات إضافية	ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
dishes	أكلات - أطباق	heart	قلب
different meals	وجبات مختلفة	It's mine.	إنها مِلكي.
difference	اختلاف - فَرْق	read aloud	يقرأ بصوتٍ عالٍ
never been before	لم يذهب إليها من قبر	bees	نحل
after-school activities	أنشطة ما بعد المدرسة	take turns	يتناوب الأدوار
pie chart	مخطط دائري	hobbies	هوایات

100			_	
			D	no line
AND EL		ity	B 101	F 3 (4
of the late of	and the same		and the first	e Goden

nature	الطبيعة	models	نماذج
knee	رُكبة	airplane	طائرة
fishing	صيد السمك	on vacation	في إجازة

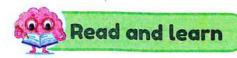
Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

A	Present	Past	PP
cook	يطهو	cooked	cooked
listen to	يستمع إلى	listened to	listened to
paint	يُلَوِّن - يطلي	painted	painted
want	يريد	wanted	wanted
talk	يتكلم	talked	talked
look	ينظر	looked	looked
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
hug	يحضن	hugged	hugged
love	יבה	loved	loved
practice	يمارس - يتدرّب	practiced	practiced
share	یشارك - یتشارك	shared	shared

أفعال غير منتظمة antiregular verbs

Pre	sent 💄	Past	PP
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
read	يقرأ	read	read
find	يجد	found	found
see	ധ്യ സ്വ	saw	seen
take turns	يتناوب الأدوار	took turns	taken turns
run	يجري	ran	run



A poem: We can all have a hobby

Amir loves traveling
He wants to do more.
He loves going places
He's never been before.

Fares is creative
And makes lots of art.
He paints and he draws
He shows us his heart.

And Noha loves nature
She hugs great big trees.
She goes hiking and camping And talks to the bees.

And then we have Tarek
Who's such a great cook 4.
He loves making dishes 4.
He finds in a book.

There are so many things
To do with our time.
We can all find a hobby o
and then say, "It's mine!"







- 👊 مبدع 20 الطبيعة
- 😉 تحضن
- 🗿 طاه طبّاخ
- 🜀 أكلات أطياق
 - 🙃 هواية

Tip!

To do a survey:

اعمل استطلاع رأي:

- Write some questions for your survey in your notebook.
 - اكتب بعض الأسئلة للاستطلاع في دفتر ملاحظاتك.
- You can answer the survey questions with short answers:

يمكنك الإجابة على أسئلة الاستطلاع بإجابات قصيرة:

- (√) Yes, I do.
- ► (X) No, I don't.
- You can add really to your answers to make them sound stronger.

يمكنك إضافة كلمة (حقًا really) لإجاباتك لجعلها تبدو أقوي.

- I really love playing tennis.
- I really enjoy watching movies.
- You can draw a pie chart for your survey.

يمكنك رسم مخطط دائري للاستطلاع الخاص بك.

Grammar Study 🗱



Adjectives (comparison)

المقارنة

Remember:

- Comparative degree:
 - We use the comparative form to compare two people, two animals or two things.
 - ◄ تُستخدم الدرجة الثانية من المقارنة (الصفات) لنقارن بين شخص وشخص أو حيوان وحيوان أو شيء وشيء وهكذا.

Examples:

- I'm younger than my sister.
- The lion is stronger than the wolf.
- We add (er) to the short adjective and use the word (than) after it.

· نُضِيف للصفة القصيرة (er) ونضع بعدها كلمة (than).

Examples:

- Football is more popular than handball.
- ▶ Handball is less popular than football.
- We use (more) or (less) before long adjectives and the word (than) after them.
 - ♦ إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها إما (less) أو (more) وبعدها (than).

Superlative degree:

• We use the superlative form to compare more than two people, animals or things.

♦ تُستخدم الدرجة الثالثة من المقارنة (الصفات) للمقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة من الأشخاص أو حيوان ومجموعة من الحيوانات أو شيء ومجموعة من الأشياء وهكذا.

Example:

- The lion is the strongest animal.
- We add (est) to the short adjective and use the word (the) before it.
 - ♦ نُضِيف للصفة القصيرة (est) ونضع قبلها كلمة (the).

Examples:

- Football is the most popular sport.
- This is the least expensive shirt I have.
- We use (the most) or (the least) before long adjectives.
 - ♦ إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها إما (the least) أو (the least).

24

Exercises on Lessons 3 😃

1 Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

cooking - free - hobby - games - painting

Maha : Can I ask you some questions?

Rania: Of course. I'm ready.

Maha : What 0 do you enjoy doing most?

Rania : I like @ most.

Maha : Do you like watching TV or playing computer

?

Rania: I like computer games more.

Maha : Do you enjoy cooking?

Rania: No, I don't. What about you? What do you like doing in your

0 time?

Maha : I like going cycling.

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. She is (old older older than the oldest) than her brother.
- The orange tree is (smaller than small the smallest smallest) the mango tree.
- 3. Ehab is the (fast faster fastest the fastest) boy in the class.
- 4. That's the (more less most less than) expensive dress in the shop.
- 5. The white car is (most the most more the least) expensive than the black car.
- 6. My grandpa is (the than they then) oldest one in the family.
- 7. Who is (tall tallest taller the tallest) than Gamal?
- 8. Who is (short shorter shorter than the shortest) one in the family?
- 9. Which story in the library is (more exciting less exciting the most exciting
 - more exciting than)?
- Swimming is (less more more than the least) popular activity.

- 11. Playing football is (the most more than more the least) popular than doing creative hobbies.
- 12. Which hobby is (more relaxing than more relaxing the least relaxing less relaxing) of the three hobbies?
- 13. Cooking is (the least less more more than) popular activity.
- **14.** Listening to music is (the most more than less the least) popular than playing computer games.
- **15.** Which sport is (the most dangerous the least dangerous more dangerous than) than rock climbing?
- 16. Football is the (most the least more less) exciting sport.
- 17. Judo is (the most the least more than less) exciting than boxing.
- 18. Which car is (less expensive less expensive than the least expensive the most expensive) than Fiat?
- 19. For me, watching a match is (the most interesting less interesting more interesting than the least interesting) than watching a film.
- 20. PE class is (most interesting more interesting more interesting than the most interesting) one. We enjoy it a lot.
- 21. I think drawing is (the most difficult difficult more more difficult the least difficult) than reading.
- 22. Playing sports is (exciting the most exciting the least exciting more exciting) than watching it.
- 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
- 1. sports doing What like you do?
 - »?
- popular most the activity Swimming is.
- 3. read you do poems, Fares When?
- 4. making loves dishes He delicious and watching TV.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

There are many different sports. Some of them are played on land, like volleyball, and others are played in water, like swimming. There are some dangerous sports like motor racing, and parachuting which is played in the air. There are sports which are done by two persons, like judo and others which are played by two teams, like basketball. The most popular sport in the world is football. The players have to practice hard to win.

- Choose the correct answer:
 - 1. (Judo Volleyball Parachuting Swimming) is a water sport.
 - 2. The underlined word "them" refers to (sports teams players hobbies).
- Answer these questions:
 - What is the most popular sport in the world?
 - 4. Which sports are dangerous?
- 5 Do a class survey about the student's favorite hobbies and sports:



Student's

Interview your classmates, ask them about their favorite hobbies and sports, and write down their answers.





Lesson 5 Free-time activities in Ancient Egypt

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





Ancient Egypt مصر القديمة



The Nile نهر النيل



The Pharaoh الفرعون



buildings مبانب



housework الأعمال المنزلية



board game لعبة لوحية



fishing صيد السمك



hunting الصيد البري



boxing ملاكمة



wrestling مصارعة



chariot race سباق العربات الحربية



archery الرماية

Extra	vocabulary	ب أصامته	A
on a farm	في مزرعة	boat	قارب - مَرْكِب
on the ground	على الأرض	river	نهر
on the way home	في الطريق للبيت	character	شخصية
It sounds fun.	يبدو هذا ممتعًا.	called	تُسَمَّى

Ac	tiv	ity	Bo	ok

musical instruments	آلات موسیقیة	dangerous	خطير
drum	طبلة	crocodiles	تماسیح
guitar	جيتار	hippos	أفراس النهر

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

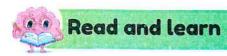
A	Present	Past	PP A
box	يُلَاكِم	boxed	boxed
help	عداسي	helped	helped
finish	ينتهي من - يُنْهِي	finished	finished
visit	يزور	visited	visited
look after	يعتني ب	looked after	looked after
live	يعيش	lived	lived
arrive	يصِل	arrived	arrived
wrestle	يصارع - يتقاتل مع	wrestled	wrestled

أفعال غير منتظمة مrregular verbs

	Present	Past	A PP
say	يقول	said	said
tell	يُخْبِر	told	told
sing	ۑٮؙٞۼٙؽؙ	sang	sung

Connect Plus 5

29



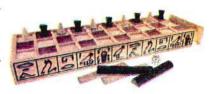
Hapi takes a trip to the city

Hapi lived in Ancient Egypt. He lived with his parents on a farm near the Nile. Every day, he helped his father look after his animals. After work, he and his sister Amunet helped his mother in the house.



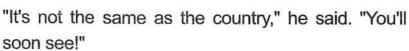
When they finished the housework, they sometimes played a board game o called senet. It was a very popular game o in Ancient Egypt.

One day o, his father said, "I'm going to the city today. Hapi, now you're ten years old, you can come with me. Your sister can help your mother today."



It was a long way to the city, but Hapi was excited.

"I've never been to the city before," he said. "What's it like, Dad?"





When they arrived in the city, Hapi saw many people and buildings. He saw two boys playing a game on the ground, but it wasn't senet.

"Hello! What are you playing?" Hapi asked them.

"Hi. This is mehen, the snake game 6," the older boy said.

"It looks fun. What other things do people in the city do in their free time?" Hapi asked them.

والداه والداه

👩 لعبة لوحية

👩 لعبة شائعة

🚯 ذات یوم

🕝 لعبة الثعبان

ीवमण 2

The younger boy said, "We play a lot of sports. Sometimes سباق العربات الحربية (3 we watch a chariot race of The Pharaoh of and his family like chariot races. They like archery o and hunting o, too," he said.

"I like boxing o!" said the older boy. "Do you want to wrestle or box @?"

"No, thank you," said Hapi. "I live in the country. I love swimming. My father and I take our boats on the river, and we enjoy fishing , too."

"That sounds fun ," said the younger boy. "Perhaps we can visit you one day."

On the way home , Hapi's dad said, "Did you like the city?"

"Yes!" said Hapi. "People don't do the same free-time activities as us, but they are very friendly.

- - 🕜 الفرعون
 - 🔞 الرماية
 - 🗿 الصيد البري
 - 🔞 الملاكمة
 - 🛈 تصارع
 - 🔞 تلاکم
 - 📵 صيد السمك
 - 🔞 بيدو هذا ممتعًا
 - 🚯 في الطريق للبيت



Activity Book Text

Children in Ancient Egypt did lots of things in their free time. They enjoyed singing and dancing. They played musical instruments 0 like the drums and the guitar. Children had lots of different toys to play with, too. They liked playing with balls, dolls, and toy animals @.

And they loved playing board games. The most popular board games were senet and mehen. Mehen was also called the snake game. Children loved swimming, too, and they often swam in the Nile. But it was dangerous 9! There were crocodiles 9 and hippos in lots of places in the Nile!

- 🕦 آلات موسیقیة
- 🙆 ألعاب علي أشكال
 - حيوانات

😉 خطیر 🙆 تماسیح

Connect Plus 5



The Lesson Notes

exciting - excited:

- ♦ هاتان الكلمتان تم ورودهما في الوحدة
- فرحان متحمس (adj) مثار فرحان متحمس
- ♦ If an adjective ends in (-ed), it often describes how a person feels.
 - ♦ الصفة المنتهية بـ (ed-) تصف كيف يشعر الشخص (في الغالب تُسْتَخْدَم لوصف عاقل).
 - Hapi was excited on his way to the city.
 - مثیر (adj) مثیر
- ♦ If an adjective ends in (-ing), it often describes the thing that makes the person feel a particular feeling.
 - الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing-) تصف الشيء الذي جعل الشخص يشعر بشعور معين
 (في الغالب تُسْتَخْدَه لوصف غير العاقل).
 - The city is really exciting.
- ♦ نفس الأمر ينطبق على الصفات التالية:

(tired - tiring - interested - interesting - surprised - surprising - amazed - amazing)

Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

wrestling – hobby – race – boats – Pharaoh

- Hapi ; Hello! What are you playing?
- Boy : Hi. This is Mehen, the snake game.
- Hapi : It looks fun. What other things do people do in their free time?
- Boy: They play a lot of sports. Sometimes they watch a chariot
 - and his family like chariot races. They like archery and hunting, too.



ARCRECLITK
Hapi : What sports do you like?
Boy : I like boxing and 6! Do you want to wrestle or box?
Hapi : No, thank you. I live in the country. I love swimming. My father and I take our on the river, and we enjoy fishing, too.
2 Read the following text and answer the questions:
Hapi lived in Ancient Egypt. He lived with his parents on a farm near the Nile. Every day, he helped his father look after his animals. After work, he and his sister Amunet helped his mother in the house. When they finished the housework, they sometimes played a board game called Senet. It was a very popular game in Ancient Egypt.
Choose the correct answer:
 Hapi lived in a (town - city - village - mountain). The underlined word "popular" means (famous - unknown - difficult - easy).
Answer these questions:
3. What was the name of the popular board game in Ancient Egypt?
4. What did Hapi do every day?
3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
1. Ancient - Hapi - Egypt - lived - in - his parents - with.
2. Hapi - did - go - his father - with - Where?
Connect Plus 5 - 33

- 3. Ancient Egypt in Children games enjoyed playing.
- ·

.....

- 4. did Who Hapi meet story in the?
- Read the text and circle T (True) or F (False).

 Correct the false sentences:



Children in Ancient Egypt did lots of things in their free time. They enjoyed singing and dancing. They played musical instruments like the drums and the guitar. Children had lots of different toys to play with, too. They liked playing with balls, dolls, and toy animals. And they loved playing board games. The most popular board games were Senet and Mehen. Mehen was also called the snake game. Children loved swimming, too, and they often swam in the Nile. But it was dangerous! There were crocodiles and hippos in lots of places on the Nile!

- Children in Ancient Egypt enjoyed playing music.
- T/F

- 2. They liked music, but they didn't have any toys.
- mey inter matter, but any unantimate any reper

- T/F
- 3. The most popular board games were Senet and Mehen.

.....

- T
- 4. Children never swam in the Nile.

......

- Swimming in the Nile was dangerous because there were hippos and crocodiles.

T/F

Lesson 6 Writing an email to a friend

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





photography /التصوير الفوتوغرافي



birdwatching مشاهدة (مراقبة) الطيور



natural environment بیئة طبیعیة



tour guide مُرشد سیاحی



gorgeous , فاتن - جمیل

ctivitu Rook



surfing رياضة ركوب الأمواج



knitting / حیاکة - خیاطة



baking خَبز (الخبيز)

,	Extra Vocabulary	كلمات إضافية	A
email	رسالة بريد إلكتروني	informal	غیر رسمی
writer	bannsid کاتب	awesome	مُدهش - رائع
introduction	مقدمة	cool	رائع
closing	خاتمة	South of Egypt	جنوب مصر

Activity book				
email friend كترونية	صديق بالمراسلة الإا	wonderful	رائع - جمیل	
taking photos	التقاط الصور	Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة	
volleyball	الكرة الطائرة	wildlife	حياة البرية	

Vocabulary Study SB student's

gorgeous : very beautiful

awesome : very good

cool : modern and nice

surfing: a sport of riding over the waves on a special board

knitting: the activity of knitting clothes using yarn

baking: the activity of making cakes and bread

birdwatching: is when you watch birds in their natural environment

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

4	Present	Past	PP
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
define	يُعرِّف	defined	defined
include	يشمل - يتضمن	included	included
plan	يُخَطِّط	planned	planned

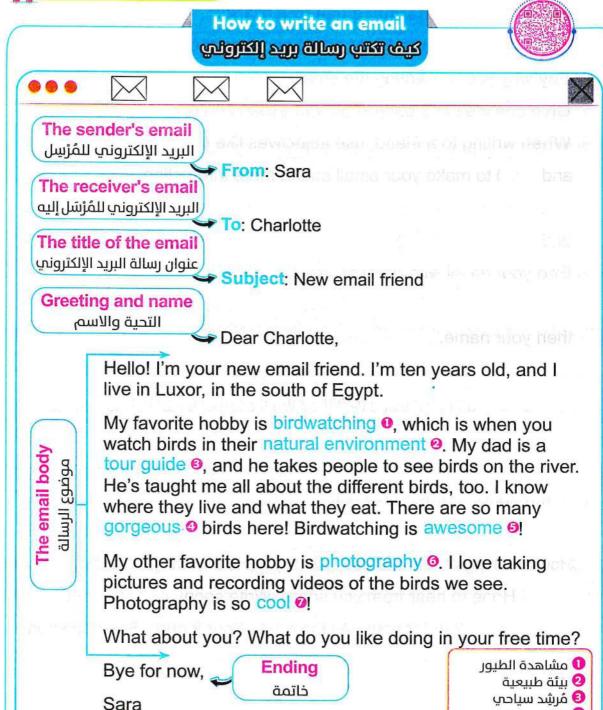
أفعال غير منتظمة 💎 Irregular verbs

A P	resent	Past	PP
teach	يُعلّم - يُدَرّس	taught	taught
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
take	يأخذ	took	taken
know	يعرف	knew	known

Tip!

- When writing an informal email to a friend:
 - 1. Begin your email with (Dear or Hi) and then the person's name.
 - 2. Say why you are writing the email.
 - 3. Give one idea in a paragraph and expand on it.
 - 4. When writing to a friend, use adjectives like (awesome, gorgeous and cool) to make your email sound more interesting.
 - 5. Use contractions like (I'm and He's), and phrases like (How's life? and How are things?)
 - 6. End your email with phrases like (Write soon, Hope to hear from you soon, See you soon, All the best, Your friend, or Bye for now), and then your name.
 - ◄ عند كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني غير رسمية لصديق:
 - ابدأ رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الخاصة بك بـ (Dear Hi) ثم اسم الشخص.
 - 2 اذكر سبب كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني.
 - 🕄 قدم فكرة واحدة في كل فقرة ثم قم بتفصيل الفكرة.
 - اكمي (awesome gorgeous cool) لكمي استخدام صفات مثل (awesome gorgeous cool) لكمي تجعل رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الخاصة بك أكثر تشويقًا.
 - 🎜 استخدم اختصارات مثل (He's و l'm) وعبارات مثل (How are things? How is life?).
 - Hope to hear from you soon Write soon) أنه رسالتك بعبارات مثل (Bye for now All the best Your friend See you soon)، ثم اسمك.





पियमण १

38

Signature

توقيع

😏 رائع

الئع الع

🗿 فاتن - حمیل

🧿 التصوير الفوتوغرافي

Activity Book Text





Hi Jamie.

Hello. I'm your new email friend. I'm ten years old and I live in Alexandria, Egypt. Have you ever been to Egypt? It's a really interesting and beautiful country. What are your hobbies 10? My favorite hobby is wildlife photography 2.



Wildlife photography is when you take pictures of animals, birds, and plants in nature. There are lots of wonderful animals in Egypt. I really love taking photos of them and learning about them. I have about 300 wildlife photos. My favorite animals are fennec foxes 6. They're gorgeous.

I love hiking, too. The Siwa Oasis @ is an awesome place to see wildlife. I often go hiking with my parents and my older brother Sherif. He's 18.

What do you like doing in your free time?

Write soon!

Bye for now,

Ramy

🕡 هوايات

🧿 تصوير الحياة البرية 📵 ثعالب الصحراء (الفنك)

🐠 واحة سيوة

Exercises on Lesson (6)

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

environment - gorgeous - birdwatching - guide - hobby

Hello! My name is Sara. My favorite hobby is 0, which a tour 6, and he takes people to see birds on the river. He's taught me all about the different birds, too. I know where they live and what they eat. There are so many @ birds here! Birdwatching is awesome!

Read the email and answer the questions:





From: Ramy
To: Jamie

Subject: My hobbies

Hi Jamie,

Hello. I'm your new email friend. I'm ten years old, and I live in Alexandria, Egypt. Have you ever been to Egypt? It's a really interesting and beautiful country.

What are your hobbies? My favorite hobby is wildlife photography. Wildlife photography is when you take pictures of animals, birds, and plants in nature. There are lots of wonderful animals in Egypt. I really love taking photos of them and learning about them. I have about 300 wildlife photos. My favorite animals are fennec foxes. They're gorgeous.

I love hiking, too. The Siwa Oasis is an awesome place to see wildlife. I often go hiking with my parents and my older brother Sherif. He's 18.

What do you like doing in your free time?

Write soon!

Bye for now,

Ramy

- Who is Ramy writing to?
- Where does Ramy live?
- What is his favorite hobby?
- 4. How many photos of animals does he have?
- What is his favorite animal?
- 6. Where is a good place to see wildlife?



...........

Dut the words in the correct order to make sentences

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

?

2. are - lots of - There - animals - wonderful - Egypt - in.

>

1. ever - been - Have - you - Egypt - to?

3. often - hiking - I - go - parents - with - my.

4. There - many - birds - gorgeous - so - are.

5. hobby - photography - favorite - wildlife - is - My.

6. My - is - guide - tour - a - dad.

Write an email to a new email friend:



▶ Talk about your hobbies. Don't forget to:

- start the email with Hi, / Hello, / Dear...
- end the email with Bye, / Write soon, / Bye for now, / Your friend.
- use contractions.
- use adjectives to make your email interesting.
- ask your email friend one or two questions.

 	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	

Term 2

-Lesson 7 Story



الكلمات <mark>الأساسية في</mark> الدرس **Main Vocabulary**



campsite /المُخَيِّم - مكان التخييم



campfire ِ نارِ المُخَيَّم



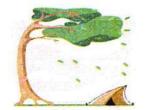
camper /ُمُخَيِّم (شخص يقيم في مُخَيِّم)¦



trail , دّرب - مسار (وسط الطبيعة) إ



rough path طريق وعر



air هواء



deep valley , وادٍ عميق



paper map تريطة ورقية



backpack حقيية ظهر



light the fire يُشعِل النار



tourist office ، مكتب سياحة



reception استقبال (إشارة محمول)

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

drop a pin on a map

يُحَدِّد موقع على الخريطة

find their way back

picnic table

يجدون طريق العودة

into a deep valley إطاولة النزهة

dangerous إقصة

في وادي عميق

arrive at

story

إيصل إلى put up the tent

ينصب خيمة

خطير

Conjugation of Verbs

Pre	sent 🗼	Past	PP)
remember	يتذكر	remembered	remembered
work	يعمل	worked	worked
smell	يشم	smelled	smelled
start	يبدأ المعاددة المعاددة	started	started
decide	يُقَرِّر	decided	decided
prepare	يُعدّ - يُجهز	prepared	prepared
drop	يُسقِط	dropped	dropped
imagine	يتخيل وموسود	imagined	imagined

	Present	Past 🗼	PP \
put	يضع	put	put
drive	يقود مَرْكَبة	drove	driven
light	يُشْعِل نار - ضوء	lit	lit
sleep	ینام	slept	slept
get	يحصل على	got	got



Read and learn

Amira goes camping

Amira went to visit her cousins Ali and Mona in Sharm El-Sheikh in the summer. They wanted to show Amira the beautiful mountains near there. So, they decided to take her camping.

Uncle Wael drove to the start of the trail ①, which is a rough path ② across the desert. "The air smelled beautiful, and they went hiking ③ into a deep valley ④. "This place is very beautiful, "Amira said. She took out her phone, recorded a video, and dropped a pin on the map ⑤.



- 🕡 بداية الدرب ② طريق وعِر
- - و حددت موقع على الخريطة

रिम्म 2

They finally arrived at the first campsite . Uncle Wael took the tent out of his backpack . "Who can remember how to put it up?" he asked.

"I can!" said Ali.

"Who is going to make the campfire 9?

"I can!" answered Mona.

"And I can cook," said Aunt Mariam.

But after 30 minutes, they found that Ali could not remember how to put up the tent, and Mona could not light the fire . So they did not eat, and they could not sleep in the tent.

The next day, they used the maps on their phones to find the next campsite. When they got there, Aunt

Mariam said, "Let's all work together today. First, we can put up the tent. Then, we can help to light the fire. Finally, you can all help me to cook dinner!"

They put up their tent quickly by working together. Then they started the fire. Next, they all worked together to prepare dinner. Amira washed the vegetables, Mona cut them, and Aunt Mariam cooked. Ali prepared the picnic table. They went to bed early. They were not tired or hungry. The next morning, they had breakfast and put on their backpacks.

"Oh, no! My phone doesn't work!" said Uncle Wael.

"My phone is the same!" said Aunt Mariam. "What about your phones, children?"

"We don't have any reception here," they answered.

"What can we do now?" Aunt Mariam asked.

"How can we find the car?"

"I have a paper map. I got it from the tourist office ,"

said Uncle Wael. "We can read the map together and find our way back to the car."





🕝 مُخيّم

🤨 نار المخيم

🐠 تشعل النار

🕑 مكتب السياحة

🥡 قام بإخراج الخيمة نقيمة الظهر

🕕 استقبال إشارة المحمول

Exercises on Lesson (7)



Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

tent - camping - valley - trail - path

Ganna: Hi, Amira! Where were you last week?

Amira : Hi, Ganna! I went to visit my cousins Ali and Mona in

Sharm El-Sheikh.

Ganna: What did you do there?

Amira: We decided to go

Ganna: How did you go there?

Amira : Uncle Wael drove us to the start of the 2, which

is a rough path across the desert.

Ganna: What did you do after that?

Amira : We went hiking into a deep 6

Ganna : Who put the @up?

Amira: Uncle Wael put the tent up after he took it out of his backpack.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. going to - is - Who - campfire - the - make?

3. car, - Ali - the - find - we - can - How?

2. map - can - read - We - the - together.

>

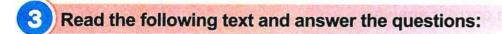
4. all - They - worked - together - dinner - to prepare.

5. at - arrived - They - the - campsite - first.

Connect Plus 5

	"A trip to a village"
> Ideas to help you:	trip - family - village - fields - trees - crops - animals - milk - meat - games - fresh air - enjoy
Listen and answ	Unit 5 Test 1
كتاب.	نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (231) آخر الأ
1. What do people us	sually do in the park when it's warm?
2. What green things	s can you find in a city like Emily's?
3. What is the proble	em Emily faces in her city?
4. Where does Emily	y go swimming?
Read and comple	ete the following text with the words from the list:(4
makir	ng – age – games – cousin – enjoy 🕽
I'm Younis. I love sp Ma doin almost the same	pending my free time with my cousins. I'm ten, maged is nine, and his brother Waleed is 11. Wale a lot of different things together because we'deduced in the computer of the

जिस्सा १



(5Ms)

People have different hobbies. Sports, computers, the internet, drawing, reading and collecting stamps are very famous hobbies, but watching television is the most common. People watch television or listen to the radio to know what is happening all over the world. They know about accidents, sports and important things. They also listen to or watch interesting programs. Many of them like football matches; others like science programs.

	THE REAL PROPERTY AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN	and the same	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	and the same of the same of
Δ	Choose	the	correct	answer
The State of the S	OHOUSE	LIIC	COLLECT	aliswell

- 1. Most people like (collecting stamps reading watching TV drawing).
- People like (one four six different) hobbies.

Answer these questions:

- Give a suitable title to the text.
- 4. Why do people listen to the news?

The Reader Granddad's Village

4 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):	(5Ms)
--	-------

- Fares lived in Alexandria with his parents and his granddad.
- 2. When Fares wanted advice, he talked to Grandmom to ask for her opinion.

Complete the following sentences:

- liked to tell Fares about his life when he was a child.
- 4. Granddad studied hard, then he playedin a park with all his friends.



Connect Plus 5

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

- I think basketball is (the most less than the least more) popular than volleyball.
- 2. I hate (travel traveling traveled travels) to cold countries.
- When she went to Sharm El-Sheikh, she decided to (go play do have) hiking.
- 4. Which hobby is (more exciting less exciting the least exciting most exciting) of those four?
- 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(1M)

- 1. free-time these children activities What like do?
- 2. called They Senet game a board played.
- Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:(7Ms)

"Going camping"

Ideas to help you:

family - camping - mountains - tents campfire - cook - hiking - enjoy









In this unit I will

- understand and use words for places in cities and villages.
- understand and use indefinite pronouns.
- listen to and understand descriptions of famous cities and landmarks.
- do a famous buildings quiz.
- find out about a new shopping mall and use the infinitive of purpose.
- understand a story about living near water.
- write a description for a competition entry.
- understand a story called The Railway Children.

Objectives

Vocabulary

Places in a city: aquarium, artifacts, bike path, fort, harbor, planetarium, ruins, straight, tram, university

Words related to the countryside: bucket, bush, curved, date palms

Vocabulary from stories: bright, fossil, frightened, glad, hit, surprised, wave

Language

- Everybody goes to the sports center on Thursday.
- We don't usually meet anybody when we go to the beach.
- Everything in this shop is made from recycled plastic.
- Designers use plants and fountains to help keep the building cool.
- I'm going to phone my cousin to ask him to our house.

Reading - A blog about a visit to Alexandria; blogs about children's favorite places; a conversation about a new shopping mall; a story about a trip to the desert; The Railway Children

Writing - Descriptions of interesting buildings; a description of a day out using adjectives and adverbs; checking your work

Speaking - Talking about places in the city and countryside; describing buildings; giving reasons for doing things

Listening Descriptions of famous buildings; a dialog

Life skills Critical thinking: appreciating the differences between the city and countryside

Values - Tolerance and acceptance of others

- Respect

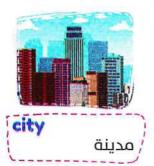
Issues and challenges - Sustainable development

Integrated cross-curriculum topics Geography: life in cities and the countryside

Lesson 1 City and village life

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary

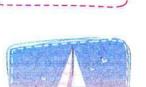








حِصن - قلعة





boat trip رحلة بالقارب

bike path مسار (طريق) للدراجات إ

tram ترأم (نوع من القطارات)





university جامعة

planetarium معرض القبة السماوية

harbor میناء بحری







ruins بقایا - آثار

museum متحف

aquarium متحف الأحياء المائية

	d				
å	ß,	d			
1				P	
				94.7	
			S. Section		1

Extr	a Vocabulary	كلمات إضافية	L
modern buildings	مباني عصرية (حديثة)	Egypt	סמנ
stars de jarlio bas	نجوم fish, sharks	Cairo (steril wedsty A)	القاهرة
colorful fish	أسماك مُلَوَّنة	rent bikes	نستأجر دراجات
The Nile	نهر النيل	cheap	رخیص
the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر	important	مهم
display (n)	عَرْض	meetings	اجتماعات
plays (n)	مسرحيات	planets	كواكب
sunset	الغروب - غروب الشمس	musical shows	عروض موسيقية

Famous places in	Alexandria	عشـهورة في الإسكندرية	اً أماكن د
The Bibliotheca Alexandrina مكتبة الإسكندرية		Ancient Roman Amphithe	eater المدرج الروماني القدي
Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية	Citadel of Qaitbay	قلعة قايتباي
Alexandria University جامعة الإسكندرية		the Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط

Activity Book	177		
thick walls	جدران سميكة	sea animals	حيوانات بحرية
stone	حَجَر - حجارة	sharks	أسماك القرش

Expressions & Prepositions

on a boat trip في رحلة بالقارب

at sunset عند غروب الشمس **at university** في الجامعة

a long time ago منذ وقت بعید travel by tram ينتقل - يسافر بالترام

on bike paths علي مسارات الدراجات



Vocabulary Study AB Activity

planetarium: A place where you can see an amazing display of stars

and planets.

aquarium: A place where you can see fish, sharks, and other sea

animals.

harbor : A place where boats stop and stay.

university: A place where students can study after they leave school.

fort - citadel: A large old building which is made of stone and has thick walls.

Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

Present		Past \	A PP
rent	يستأجر	rented	rented
protect	تحمت	protected	protected
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	learned (learnt)
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
visit	يزور	visited	visited
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
study	يدرس	studied	studied

أفعال غير منتظمة مrregular verbs

Present		Past	PP A
be (am - is - are)	یکون	was - were	been
has - have	يملك - لديه	had	had
go	يذهب	went	gone
see	یری	saw	seen
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought	thought
show	يعرض	showed	shown - showed



There are about 102 million people in Egypt. Over 7 million people live in Cairo and over 3.5 million people live in Alexandria.

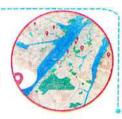


يوجد حوالي 102 مليون شخص في مصر. أكثر من 7 مليون شخص يعيشون في القاهرة وأكثر من 3.5 مليون شخص يعيشون في الإسكندرية.



More than half of the people on Earth live in a city.

يعيش أكثر من نصف سكان الكرة الأرضية فم المدن.

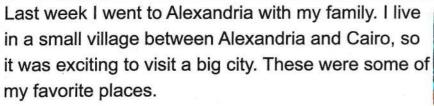




How did Nesma and her family travel around Alexandria?

My city visit

by Nesma, aged 9





The harbor

Alexandria has a very important harbor ①. It's the oldest and biggest in Egypt. We went on a boat trip ② from the harbor at sunset ③. It was beautiful because we could see the city and all the boats on the sea. We visited the Citadel of Qaitbay ②, too. This is a very old fort ⑤ that people used to protect the city.

- 🕡 میناء بحری
- ورحلة بالقارب 🧿
- 📵 عند غروب الشمس
 - 🗿 قلعة قايتباي
 - 🕝 حِصْن
- 👩 معرض القبة السماوية
 - 7 عَرْض

The Bibliotheca Alexandrina

This library is a famous modern building near the harbor in Alexandria. The round building is beautiful and different to anything I've seen before. It has over 4 million books! There are also museums and a planetarium o, where we saw an amazing display of about stars and planets.

पिटमक्ता र

Connect Plus 5

Alexandria University

When we were in Alexandria, we visited my cousin. She's at university there, and she's studying science. She showed us where she studied. The university buildings are very big — much bigger than my school! There are lots of students, and I think it would be a great city to study in.

The aquarium

I really liked seeing the colorful fish and sea animals in the aquarium ②. It isn't very big, but there are lots of different things to see there. I learned a lot about fish in the Mediterranean Sea ① and the Red Sea, as well as fish which live in the Nile.



- 🔞 الحامعة
- 🤨 متحف الأحياء المائية
- " البحر الأبيض المتوسط (المتوسط المتوسط المتو
 - 🛈 بقایا آثار
- 🕑 المدرج الروماني القديم
 - 📵 ازدحام مرورب
 - 🐠 مسارات دراجات
 - 😉 الترام

Roman amphitheater

We visited the ruins of the ancient Roman amphitheater in the city. A long time ago, people used it for musical shows, meetings, and plays. It was interesting to visit somewhere so old!

It was fun to be in Alexandria, because there are lots of things to see and do. Over 3.5 million people live here, so there's a lot of traffic . There are bike paths in some parts of the city, and you can rent bikes to travel around, but we traveled by tram . It was easy and cheap, and we saw lots of different places. I can't wait to visit the city again soon!

Exercises on Lesson

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

Citadel - visit - fort - harbor - trip

2 Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

reading - planetarium - Library - books - harbor

Hagar : Do you know the Bibliotheca Alexandrina?

Nesma : Of course. It's very famous. It's the 0 of Alexandria.

Hagar : Did you visit it before?

Nesma: Yes, I visited it last week.

Hagar : Where is it?

Nesma : It's near the 2 in Alexandria.

Hagar : Do you know how many 6 there are?

Nesma: Yes. The library has over 4 million books.

Hagar : Are there anything else in the building?

Nesma: Yes. There are also museums and a @,

where we saw an amazing display about stars and planets.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

My name is Nesma. I'm nine years old. When we were in Alexandria last week, we visited my cousin. She's at university there, and she's studying science. She showed us where she studied. The university buildings are very big, much bigger than my school! There are lots of students, and I think it would be a great city to study in.

Choose the correct answer:

- Nesma is in (primary school prep school university secondary school).
- The underlined word "She" refers to (Nesma Nesma's sister -Nesma's friend - Nesma's cousin).

Answer these questions:

- 3. What is Nesma's cousin studying?
- 4. What is the difference between the university and Nesma's school?

.....



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:			
1. know - What - you - do - about - Alexandria?	2		
2. important - a - has - harbor - Alexandria - very.			
3. did - Nesma - How - around - travel - Alexandria?	?		
4. bike - are - paths - in - the city - There.			
5. did - see - they - the planetarium - in - What?	?		
Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding	g elements		
"A visit to Alexandria"			
last summer - family - train - beach - libra - citadel - shopping - enjoy - great city	ary		
	ary		
	ary		
- citadel - shopping - enjoy - great city			
- citadel - shopping - enjoy - great city			
- citadel - shopping - enjoy - great city			
- citadel - shopping - enjoy - great city			

Term 2

Lesson 2 Language

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Khan El-Khalili , حي خان الخليلي



favorite place , مكان مفضل



sports center / مركز رياضي



café كافيه - مقهب



bakery مَخْبَز



recycled plastic بلاستيك مُعَاد تدويره



famous person شخص مشهور



have fun يستمتع

,A	Extra Vocabulary	كلمات إضافية	
quiet	هادئ	difficult	מאה
shopping	التَسَوُّق	delicious food	طعام لذيذ

Activity Book			
summer vacation	الإجازة الصيفية	garbage	قمامة
secondary school	مدرسة ثانوية	drop litter	يلقي قمامة على الأرض
Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء	local shop	متجر مَحلي

Expressions & Prepositions

made from

مصنوع من

know about

يعرف عن

on the weekend

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

on TV

في التلفزيون

on my first day

في يومي الأول

do well

يؤدي جيدًا

Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

A P	resent	Past	PP A
play	يلعب	played	played
arrive	يصل و المالية	arrived	arrived
drop	يرمي - يلقي	dropped	dropped

أفعال غير منتظمة 💎 Irregular verbs

A Pres	sent	Past	A PP
have fun	يستمتع	had fun	had fun
meet	يُقابل	met	met
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
make	يصنع	made	made
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	thought
come	يأتي	came	come
know	يعرف	knew	known
sell	يبيع	sold	sold



Read and learn

Which place is very quiet?

What's your favorite place?



My favorite place is the sports center • in our village. **Everybody** goes to the sports center on Thursday night. We meet all our friends, play sports, and have fun.





My favorite place is the café onext to my grandparents' house. Don't eat anything before you go there. The cakes are very big and there is **nothing** there I don't like!

0 مرکز ریاضی

- നമ്മ 🙆
- 📵 سوق خان الخليلي
 - 💯 شاطمهٔ
 - 😉 ھادئ



Somebody first took me to the Khan El-Khalili market when I was six. It's a fun place to visit and you can buy everything you need there! I bought something there last week. I think everybody who visits Cairo should come to this market!



My favorite place is the beach onear our house. It's beautiful and quiet on and nobody knows about it. We don't usually meet anybody when we go there!







: Look at this new bakery, Mom. Is there anything you want, Injy?



Injy : Yes, there is, and there isn't anybody inside. Can we quickly buy some cakes

before people arrive, Mom?



Mom: No! I bought everything we need in the market this morning.



: But everybody says the cakes are really good here!



: Not today, girls, but I'll buy you something next time we're out shopping.





Grammar Study



الضمائر غير المحددة Indefinite Pronouns

We use indefinite pronouns to talk about people, things and places which we don't name.

نستخدم الضمائر غير المحددة للحديث عن الأشخاص والأشياء والأماكن التي لا نسميها.

- everyone everybody everything
- We use (everyone) and (everybody) to talk about people. نستخدم (everybody) و (everyone) بمعنب (الجميع) للتحدث عن الأشخاص.

Examples:

- Everyone is busy.
- Everybody goes to the sports center on Thursday night.
- What did everybody do yesterday?
- We use (everything) to talk about things.

نستخدم (everything) بمعنى (كل شيء) للحديث عن الأشياء.

Examples:

- You can buy everything you need there!
- ▶ Is everything OK?

نستخدم هذه الضمائر في الجمل المثبتة والاستفهامية (Positive - Questions).

- someone somebody something
- We use (someone) and (somebody) to talk about people.

نستخدم (somebody) و (someone) بمعنم (شخص ما) للحديث عن الأشخاص.

Examples:

- Someone is on the phone.
- Somebody first took me to the Khan El-Khalili market when I was six.

We use (something) to talk about things.

نستخدم (something) بمعنى (شيء ما) للحديث عن الأشياء.

Example:

I bought something there last week.

نستخدى هذه الضمائر في الجمل المثبتة (Positive Sentences).

anyone - anybody - anything

We use (anyone) and (anybody) to talk about people.

نستخدم (anybody) و (anyone) بمعنب (أي شخص) للحديث عن الأشخاص.

Examples:

- ► Can I speak to anyone?
- We don't usually meet anybody when we go there.
- We use (anything) to talk about things.

نستخدم (anything) بمعنى (أي شيء) للحديث عن الأشياء.

Examples:

- Don't eat anything before you go there.
- Did you find anything there you could buy?

نستخدم هذه الضمائر في الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية (Negative - Interrogative).

- no one nobody nothing
- ◆ We use (no one) and (nobody) to talk about people.

نستخدم (nobody) و (nobody) بمعنب (لا أحد) للحديث عن الاشخاص.

Examples:

- There's no one in the office.
- I found nobody there to help me.

We use (nothing) to talk about things.

نستخدم (nothing) بمعنى (لا شيء) للحديث عن الأشياء.

Example:

There is nothing there I don't like.

نستخدم هذه الضمائر في الجمل المثبتة (Positive Sentences).

الاحظ الأتى: : Note the following

- I don't have anything to do today.
 I have nothing to do today.
- ► There isn't anything in the box.
 = ► There is nothing in the box.
 - لاحظ أن كل الضمائر السابقة تُعامَل معاملة المفرد.



- There is something wrong with this television set.
- Nobody knows what's going to happen.
- Somebody wants to see you, Dad.
- Everybody here is welcomed.
- Is there anything I can do?

Exercises on Lesson (2)

2

Complete the text with the correct indefinite pronoun:



something - Nobody - everything - anything - Everybody

Hi, I'm Nesma. I love going to the park on the weekend. I meet my friends there, and we play games. It's a beautiful place, and • ____everything____ in the park is clean. • _____ leaves garbage or drops litter. There's always • _____ to see or do.

in my family loves the park, too. Sometimes my mom and I play with my little sister Dalia, and my dad plays football with my



62

brother Waleed.

- Step Ahead

2 Complete the dialogue with these words:



anybody - anything - everybody - everything - something

Aya : Look at this new bakery, Mom. Is there • you want,

Injy?

Injy : Yes, there is, and there isn't @ inside. Can we

quickly buy some cakes before people arrive, Mom?

Mom : No! I bought 69 we need in the market this morning.

Aya : But @ says the cakes are really good here!

Mom : Not today, girls, but I'll buy you 6 next time we're

out shopping.

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I'm hungry. Is there (anything anybody everything nothing) to eat?
- 2. There is (everything somebody anything nobody) at the door. I think it is your friend.
- Hana is really funny and (nobody anybody something everybody) likes her.
- 4. That test was very difficult. Did (somebody something anybody nobody) do well in it?
- (Everything Everybody Somebody Anything) in this shop is made from recycled plastic.
- 6. There is (nothing anything everything something) on the table for you.
 It's a present from your grandpa!
- 7. I know (anybody anything anyone somebody) in secondary school.
- 8. I always eat (something everything everybody anybody) for breakfast.
- 9. There isn't (everything something anything nothing) in my school bag.

- (Somebody Anybody Everybody Nobody) helps me with my homework. I do it with no help.
- (Nobody Everybody No one Anybody) in my family loves summer vacation. It's fun.
- There was (nothing somebody anything everything) interesting on TV last night.
- 13. I didn't know (everything nobody somebody anybody) on my first day at school.
- 14. I love (something everything someone anything) about my town.
- 15. Somebody (am is were are) at the door. Can anybody open the door?
- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
- 1. at learns Everybody about the planetarium the stars.
 - <u>|</u>
- 2. your What's place, Magdy favorite?
 - <u>></u>?
- 3. are cakes The here good really.
 - <u>></u>
- 4. house My near is beach the.
- 5. is There somebody the at door.

 - 6. place fun visit to It's a.
 - <u>></u>
 - 7. café place the is My favorite.

Lesson 3 (Amazing buildings



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



statues تماثيل



artifacts , آثار (قِطع آثرية)



temple טאור (



arches آقواس



environment



tower برج



roof إسطح البناية



steel حديد صلب - فولاذ



modern عصري (حديث)



unusual /غير اعتبادي - غير نمطي



made from مصنوع من



glass windows نوافذ زحاجية

Famous buildings: مباني مشهورة

Sydney Opera House, Australia

دار أوبرا سيدني، أستراليا

Burj Khalifa, Dubai

برج خلیفة، دبی

Iconic Tower, New Administrative Capital of Egypt

البرج الأيقوني، العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة لمصر

The Egyptian Museum, Cairo, Egypt

المتحف المصري، القاهرة، مصر

The Grand Egyptian Museum, Giza, Egypt

المتحف المصري الكبير، الجيزة، مصر

The Leaning Tower of Pisa, Italy

برج بيزا المائل، إيطاليا

The Karnak Temple, Luxor, Egypt

معيد الكرنك، الأقصر، مصر

The Guggenheim Museum, Bilbao, Spain

متحف غوغنهايم، بلباو، إسبانيا

Activity Boo	k		
Africa	قارة أفريقيا	columns	أعمدة
The AlDar He	eadquarters building مبنی مقر الدار (أبو ظبی)	seats	مواعد
performance	أداء - عرض	thick walls	جدران سميكة
corner	رُكن	ruins (n)	أطلال - أنقاض - بقايا
The Roman a	mphitheater المدرج الروماني (الإسكندرية)	The Citadel of	f Qaitbay قلعة قايتباي (الإسكندرية)

Expressions & Prepositions



	Regular ver	
Prese	ent	Past

A F	resent A	A Past A	A PART A
correct	يُصَدِّح	corrected	corrected
look like	يُشبه - يبدو مثل	looked like	looked like
describe	يصِف	described	described
design	يُصَمَّم	designed	designed

Term 2

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Pr	esent 🗼 🗼	Past	PP
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
know	يعرف	knew	known

DID YOU

The Grand Egyptian Museum in Cairo will be one of the world's largest museums. It will have thousands of important artifacts from Ancient Egypt, including about 5,000 from Tutankhamun. سيكون المتحف المصري الكبير في القاهرة أحد أكبر المتاحف في العالم. وسكون فيه آلاف القِطَع الأثرية الهامة من مصر القديمة، منها حوالم 5 آلاف قطعة لتوت عنخ آمون.

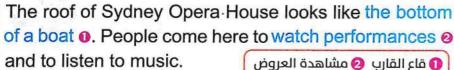


Listening



Sydney Opera House, Sydney, Australia

دار أويرا سيدني، أستراليا





Burj Khalifa, Dubai, United Arab Emirates

يرج خليفة، دبى، الإمارات المرينة المتّحدة





Iconic Tower, New Administrative Capital of البرج الأيقوني العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة لمصر **Egypt**

It is the tallest building on in Africa.







The Egyptian Museum, Cairo, Egypt

المتحف المعري القامرة، معر

and important 0.

🕡 قدیم ومهم



The Leaning Tower of Pisa, Italy برج بيزا العائل إيطاليا

This building has lots of arches ②. There's something unusual about this tower!



Karnak Temple, Luxor, Egypt

ميد الكرئك الأقدوهر

The old buildings here are made of stone. There isn't anything made from glass. Everyone feels very small when they see the statues (3) here.



The Guggenheim Museum, Bilbao, Spain ليناليسإلها إلى المناقبة وعناهايم، بالباق السيائيا

This modern building is made of steel ②. Nothing is straight!



Activity Book Text



The Citadel of Qaitbay

قلمة قايتباي

It's a big square 10 It's a big square building with very thick walls 20. Almost everything is made of stone 30, and there are tall round towers 30 in the corners 50 of the building. It's a fort 50, and it was built to protect the city. Nobody could go in it when the doors were closed!



🕦 مربع 👩 حوائط سميكة 👩 حجارة 🕜 أبراج مستديرة 👩 زوايا 👩 حِصن

The AlDar Headquarters

مقر الحار

Nothing is straight on this building! It is made of glass on and steel on It's modern on, so it doesn't have any towers, and there aren't any columns on It's an unusual building on the straight of the strai



🕜 مستقیم 🔞 الزجاج 🧐 الفولاذ 🕦 حدیث - عصری 🕦 أعمدة 🗗 مبنی غیر نمطی

The Roman amphitheater in Alexandria فيعتدري الروماني بالإسكندرية

It's a big building made of stone. There are seats ® where everybody used to sit and watch plays ®. There are some tall columns. It's a ruin ®, but it's a beautiful building.



📵 مقاعد 🛭 مسرحیات 🤠 أثر - أطلال مبني

Exercises on Lesson (3

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

fort - museum - towers - stone - walls

The Citadel of Qaitbay is in Alexandria. It is a big square with very thick

It is a big square with v

2 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

learning - the most - to build - to learn - will be

Museums are interesting places to visit. People around the world love going to museums • about the past and to see interesting artifacts. The Grand Egyptian Museum in Giza • one of • important museums in the world. Architects have used steel and glass • a beautiful building for Egypt's most important Egyptian artifacts.

i de the words in the confect order to make sentence	3	Put the words in the correct order to make sentences
--	---	--

1. can - see - you - in - the photo - What?

2. Khalifa - Burj - lots of - has - windows - glass.

3. This - has - building - lots - arches - of.

4. steel - of - made - glass - It's - and.

Write an email of (50) words to a friend who is visiting your city or village in your notebook:

Ask him what he likes doing, and say what you want to do with him. Your email address is adel@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is sherif@school.net.

From:
To:
Subject:

Lesson 4 Why we do things



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



shopping mall مول تجاري



clothes store متجر ملابس



shoe store متجر أحذية



rooftop garden حديقة على السطح



fountain نافورة /



movie theater ردار سينما - دار عرض أفلام



architects مهندسون معماریون



designs (n) تصمیمات

,	Extra Vocabulary	كلمات إضافية	L,
open (adj)	مفتوح	nature	الطبيعة
plans (n)	خُطَط	environment	بيئة المراد
outside	في الخارج - خارج - بالخارج	great news	أخبار رائعة

Expressions & Prepositions

look at ينظر إلى That sounds exciting.

هذا يبدو مثيرًا.

in the mall

في مركز التسوق

keep cool

يظل باردًا

look nice

يبدو لطيفًا

on the roof

علي السطح

next to

بجوار - بجانب



Connect Plus 5

Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة 🔪 Regular verbs

A	Present	A Past	A PP
open	يفتح - يَفْتَتِح - يُفْتَتَح	opened	opened
plant	يزرع	planted	planted
decide	يُقَرِّر	decided	decided
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	relaxed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

	Present	Past	A PP
find	يجِد	found	found
build	يبني	built	built
grow	يزرع	grew	grown
keep	يحافظ على - يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept
meet	يقابل	met	met
buy	یشتری	bought	bought
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
sit	يجلس	sat	sat

Read and learn

What will keep people cool in the shopping mall?

Grandma: Do you like my new house, Nagwa?

Nagwa: Yes, but it's very big! I can't find Dad.

Grandma: He's in the living room!

Nagwa: Oh, yes! What are you doing, Dad?

Dad : I'm looking at these designs for

the new shopping mall 0. I'm meeting the architects 0 to decide

on 6 the plans 6 tomorrow.



🕧 مركز التسوُّق

🧿 المهندسين المعماريين

📵 يُقرُّر

🕢 خطَط



Lesson 4

Nagwa

: That sounds exciting. What will be in the mall?

Dad

: There'll be stores selling everything -- clothes stores, shoe stores, and things for the home.

😉 يتم افتتاحه 👩 عدائق السطح 🕜 دار سر 🕰

Nagwa

: Great, I love shopping! Can I go there to buy some new clothes?

🔞 نافورة

Dad

: You can when it's open o! It will take about a year to build.

Nagwa

: That's a long time. Will there be anything for my friends to do there?

Dad

: Yes, there'il also be lots of cafés with tables and chairs outside.

Nagwa

: That's nice! Will it be too hot, though?

Dad

: No, we're planting lots of plants there to keep people cool. It will look nice, and it will be good for the environment, too.

Nagwa

: Yes, lots of new buildings have plants growing in them or on the roof. People make rooftop gardens of to get more nature into our cities. Is there anything else for my friends?

Dad

: Yes, there's a movie theater of there, and a big fountain of to sit next to.

Nagwa

: I can't wait to see it, Dad! Everybody will love it.

Grammar Study 🏌



to يكل + infinitive

(المصدر) stem verb

We use (to) to express purpose and to answer the questions beginning with (Why):

تُستخدم (to) للتعبير عن الغرض، وتُستخدم أيضًا للإجابة علم السؤال البادم ب (Why):

Examples:

- Why do you go to school? To learn.
- I go to bed early to get up early.
- She bought a piece of cloth to make a new dress.

Exercises on Lesson (4)



Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

rooftop - theater - designs - stores - shopping

Nagwa : What are you doing, Dad?

: I'm looking at these 0 for the new shopping mall. Dad

Nagwa That sounds exciting. What will be in the mall?

: There'll be 20 selling everything – clothes stores, Dad shoe stores, and things for the home.

Nagwa Great, I love 6! Will it be too hot?

: No, we're planting lots of plants there to keep people cool. It will Dad

be good for the environment.

Yes, people make @ gardens to get more nature Nagwa into our cities. I can't wait to see it, Dad!

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Builders use steel and glass (make makes to make to making) buildings look modern.
- 2. I like going to movie theaters (to watch watching watch watches) new movies.
- 3. People go to shopping malls to (buy to buying bought to buy) new clothes.
- 4. Designers use plants and fountains (to because or but) help keep the building cool.
- 5. I'm going to phone my cousin (to asking asked ask to ask) him to come to our house.
- 6. I go to the club to (meeting to meet meet met) friends.
- 7. In the future, architects will design houses (to be be been being) cool in hot temperatures.
- 8. The Citadel of Qaitbay was built (so or because to) protect the city of Alexandria.

- Step Ahead

- We're visiting Alexandria to (learn learning learns to learn) about the past.
- 10. We visited the ancient ruins (see saw to see seeing) the harbor and the Bibliotheca Alexandrina.
- Builders use stone, glass and steel (to make to making makes make) modern buildings.
- 12. People should plant more trees in cities to (keeping to keep kept keep) the streets cool.
- Read the text. Circle T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences:

Hi Talia. I've got some great news! We will soon have a new shopping mall in our city, and I'm very excited! We need a new shopping mall. The shopping mall will have something for everyone! There'll be different stores where you can buy everything you want. We can meet there to go shopping. There'll be restaurants and cafés, too. So, it'll be a fun place to eat. I hope my mom and dad take us there to have lunch. And there'll also be a movie theater. I can't wait to go. It'll be a great place to meet friends. Would you like to meet me there? It'll be a nice place to visit because there's going to be an amazing rooftop garden! There will be lots of trees and plants inside. The plants will make it cool, so I think lots of people will want to go there to sit and relax. I think it will be beautiful, too. I can't wait for the new shopping mall to open!

There will soon be a new swimming pool in the city.

TIF

- There will soon be a new shopping mall in the city.
- The mall will have lots of different stores.

T/F

3. There won't be any places where people can go to have something to eat. T/F

......

Some people will go there to watch movies.

T/F



5. There will be trees and plants inside.

- 6. The mall will be hot inside.
 - Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
 - 1. you Do like new my house?
 - 2. am -1 looking the at designs.
 - 3. I Can buy new some clothes?
 - 4. are Plants for good environment the.
 - 5. will -When the mall new open?

<u>></u>

- 6. do -Why people the go beach to?
- 7. room living the He in is.
- 8. mall be will What the in?
- 9. plants are We planting lots of.
- 10. build to It take will about a year.

T/F

-Lesson 5 A visit to the desert

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس







lake بحیرة



o**asis** واحة



fossils حفریات



date palms نخیل البلح ,



sand dunes کثبان رملیة



bushes شُجَيْرَات



path مسار - طریق - درب



curved مُنْدَنِ



straight lines خطوط مستقیمة



whale حوت



bucket ر دلو - جردل

A Ex	tra Vocabulary	مات إضافية	ر کا
round	دائري - مستدير	garlic	ثوم
bright	لامع - ساطع	onions	بصل
fantastic	رائع	spices	بهارات - توابل
green grass	عُشب أخضر	fresh tomatoes	طماطم طازجة
silver fish	سمك فضي	fishing boat	قارب صید

dry جاف <mark>imagine</mark> أشكال غريبة strange shapes محظوظ

Expressions & Prepositions

swimming past پسبح مارًا من أمامه a long way from بعید جدًا عن by the sea بجوار البحر

for a short time لوقت قصیر got out of the car خرج من السيارة

Activity Book

huge	ضخم	shark	سمكة القرش
objects	أشياء	crocodiles	تماسیح
shells	صدَف - أصداف - قشور	area	منطقة
The Wadi Hitan Fo	ssil and Climate Change Museum متحف الحفريات وتغثّر المناذ بوادي الحيتار	coast	ساحل

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Pres	ent	Past A	PP A
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
pull	يسحب	pulled	pulled
cook	يطهو	cooked	cooked
look	ينظر	looked	looked
stop	يتوقف	stopped	stopped
smile	يبتسم	smiled	smiled
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined

Denm 2

78

→Step Ahead

أفعال غير منتظمة 💮 Irregular verbs

Pres	sent	Past	PP A
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
drive	يقود (مَرْكَبَة)	drove	driven
think	یفکر - یعتقد	thought	thought
catch	يصطاد - يمسك	caught	caught
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
get out	يَخرُج	got out	got out
know	يعرف	knew	known
stand	يقف	stood	stood
say	يقول	said	said
tell	يخبر	told	told

Read and learn

How did Grandpa and Younis travel into the desert?

Story: A whale in the desert!



Younis was walking through the date palms onear his home. It was hot and the sun was a bright of yellow circle in the sky. Tall green grass and bushes of grew next to the path to the lake. Younis saw his grandpa pulling his fishing boat out of the water.



Unit 6

"Hello, Grandpa!" he said. "Did you catch anything today?"

"Yes, I did!" Grandpa showed Younis a bucket of thin silver fish.

"Fantastic," said Younis. "We can have fish for dinner."

"We can cook them with onions, garlic, and spices," said Grandpa.

"Mom has fresh tomatoes, too," said Younis.

"We can grow many things in the oasis, can't we? And we're lucky to have fresh fish when we're a long way from the sea," said Crandpa.

- 🕜 ڏلو
- 👩 كثبان رملية
- 👩 أشكال غريبة
- 🕜 خطوط مستقیمة
 - 🔞 منحنیة
 - 🧿 حفریات حوت

"I'd love to live by the sea!" said Younis. "I'd go swimming every day."

"Did you know that there used to be a sea where we're standing now?" Younis looked at the sand dunes 9. "Here? But we're a long way from the sea, Grandpa." Grandpa smiled. "Tomorrow, I'll take you into the desert and show you something so you'll understand."

The next day, Grandpa drove Younis through the desert. Younis looked at the sand under the blue sky. There was no water here. "Grandpa is wrong!" he thought.

After some time, Grandpa stopped. They got out and walked for a short time. Soon, they saw strange shapes 6. There were hard white shapes in the sand. Some were straight lines 6, some were round, and some were curved 8.

"Can you see what they are, Younis?" Grandpa asked.

"They look like big fish!" said Younis.

"You're almost right. These are whale fossils o. Where do whales live?" "In the sea!" said Younis.

"That's right. Forty million years ago, everything here was sea. Imagine that!" Younis closed his eyes and imagined being under the water. He thought about fish all around him and a big whale swimming past.

"Wow, Grandpa. I never thought I would see whales in the dry yellow desert!" he said.



The Wadi Hitan Fossil and Climate Change Museum 0

is a beautiful curved building in the desert near Fayoum. The museum looks like the large rocks in the desert. The museum was built in Wadi Hitan because of the amazing whale fossils that people found in the desert. Inside the museum is the largest complete whale fossil in the world. It is 37 million years old and 18 meters long. There are shark and crocodile fossils here, too. People come here to find out about a big change in the area. This area used to be the sea. Whales and sharks used to swim here millions of years ago, but now the በ متحف الحفريات وتغير المناخ بوادي الحيتان water is gone. The area is a desert.



Exercises on Lesson

-

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

lake - bright - boat - bushes - fish

Younis was walking through the date palms near his home. It was hot, and the sun was a 0yellow circle in the sky. Tall green grass and grew next to the path to the saw his grandpa pulling his fishing @ out of the water. He ran towards his boat to see the fish his grandpa caught. He was very happy with the fish.

Read the text and answer the questions:



The Wadi Hitan Fossil and Climate Change Museum is a beautiful curved building in the desert near Fayoum. The museum looks like the large rocks in the desert. It was built in Wadi Hitan because of the amazing whale fossils that people found in the desert. Inside the museum is the largest complete whale fossil in the world. It is 37 million years old and 18 meters long. There are shark and crocodile fossils here, too. People come here to find out about a big change in the area.



Unit 6

This area used to be the sea. Whales and sharks used to swim here millions of years ago, but now the water is gone and the area is a desert.

Choose the correct answer:

- A (shark fossil crocodile fossil dinosaur fossil whale fossil) is the most famous fossil in the museum.
- The underlined word "It" refers to the (beach desert museum sea).
- Answer these questions:
 - 3. What does the museum look like?
 - 4. How old is the whale fossil?
- 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. sun The was bright the sky in.
- 2. We have can dinner for fish.
- 3. can grow We things many the oasis in.

<u>></u>

.....

- 4. love to live the by sea I'd.
- 5. What see do in you the desert?
- Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"The desert"

| desert - oasis - date palms - bushes - sand dunes - hot - dry - sun - bright





Lesson

-Lesson 6 Writing a description



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



description وصف



school competition مسابقة مدرسية



prizes جوائز



on vacation في عُطلة (إجازة)



Ras Muhammed National Park رحديقة رأس محمد الوطنية



sea plants نباتات بحرية



snorkeling الغوص قريبًا من سطح الماء بأنبوب تنفس



snorkel أنبوب التنفس



masks أقنعة



boat trip , رحلة بالقارب



felt sick , شعر بالتعب



competition entry , اشتراك في مسابقة

Extra Va	ocabulary	مات إضافية	۲۱ کار
clean warm water	ماء دافماً نظیف	national park	حديقة وطنية
bright colorful fish ט زاھية	أسماك مُلَوَّنة بألوا	around us	امار ما المسالم المسالم حُولنا المسالم المسالم
photos	طور	features	خصائص - سمات

mistakes رُكبة

أخطاء

Unit 6

Activity Bo	ok		
fruit	فاكهة	old truck	شاحنة قديمة
yogurt	زبادي	figs	تين
honey	عسل	Sayadeya	أكلة سمك صيادية
dessert	تحلية - الحلو بعد الأكل	fishing boat	قارب صید
harbor	ميناء	loudly	بصوت عالِ

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

		A
ent	Past A	PP A
یستمتع ب	enjoyed	enjoyed

أفعال منتظمة

A	Present A	Past A	A
enjoy	یستمتع ب	enjoyed	enjoyed
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	breathed
try	يحاول	tried	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

P	resent \	Past	A PP
feel	يشعر - يحس	felt	felt
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
see	یری	saw	seen



What did they see in the water?

School Competition

We went to Sharm El-Sheikh on vacation o. It was a lot of fun! On the last day, we got a boat to visit Ras Muhammed National Park @. I liked the boat trip, but my little brother Adam felt sick. He had to sit on Mom's knee! When we got to the national park, we tried snorkeling 6. It was amazing!





쥥 الغوص قريبًا من سطح الماء



We wore masks o over our faces and used a snorkel o to breathe underwater. 🙆 أقنعة 🕝 أنبوبة التنفس للغطس

We loved swimming in the clear warm water.

We saw bright colorful fish swimming quickly around us, and some beautiful. tall sea plants, too.

Amira, aged 11

Activity Book Text



Who was Talia staying with on vacation?

Hi! My name is Talia. It was the first day of my vacation. I felt so happy and excited! Everybody got up early and we ate fruit 10 and yogurt 20 with honey 3 for breakfast.

Then we walked to the harbor o in Hurghada and looked at the pretty blue fishing boats o. I saw a man in an old truck. He was selling ice to the men in the fishing boats. After that, we quickly walked to the fish market because it was getting late. Mom wanted to buy some fresh fish to cook for dinner. It was a colorful market and people were talking loudly. It was very exciting! We



- በ فاكهة
 - و زبادي
 - 📵 عسل
- 🕜 میناء بحری
- 🕝 قوارب الصيد
- 👩 أكلة سمك صيادية
 - 🕜 تحلىة

bought four big gray fish and some fresh figs. I really love figs! They're my favorite fruits. Then we went back to Grandma's house where we were staying. In the evening, I helped Mom make Sayadeya of for dinner with the fish from the market. And then we had figs and ice cream for dessert . It's my favorite! It was a great day!

Tip!

How to make a description:

كيف تُقَدّم وصفًا:

When you write a description, think about what you saw, what you did, and how you felt. Always use adjectives, adverbs and exclamation points to make your writing more interesting. Using a photo or a picture is very important. Don't forget to use informal language. When you have finished, check your work carefully. Can you improve anything? يما أفكر في الذي رأيته، وما قمتُ به، وما كان شعورك حينئذ. لكي تجعل كتابتك أكثر تشويقًا وامتاعًا؛ استخدم دائمًا صفات لتصف بها الأسماء وظروف تحدث لتصف بها الأفعال وأيضًا علامات تعجب. استخدامك لصورة عن الموضوع الذي تتحدث عنه مهم جدًا. لا تنسم أن تستخدم لغة غير رسمية. عندما تنتهي، راجع كل ما كتبت بعناية. هل بإمكانك تعديل أو تحسين أيّ مما كتبته؟

Exercises on Lesson (6

The last	Read	and	complete	the	following	text	with	the	words	from	the	list
-	dell'entities della de	MATERIAL PROPERTY.	HIT OF THE PARTY OF THE PARTY.	AD REAL	THE PARTY NAMED IN THE PARTY NAMED IN							

trip - masks - snorkel - vacation - boat

Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

description - National Park - bright - vacation - snorkeling

Manal : Hi Amira! Where were you last month?

Amira : Hi Manal. We went to Sharm El-Sheikh on 0



Manal : Did you visit Ras Muhammed 2 ?

Amira : Of course. On the last day, we got a boat to visit Ras

Muhammed National Park.

Manal : Did you try 6?

Amira : Yes. It was amazing! We wore masks over our faces and used

a snorkel to breathe underwater.

Manal: What did you see underwater?

Amira : We saw 6 colorful fish swimming quickly

around us, and some beautiful, tall sea plants, too!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions:



Hi! My name is Talia. It was the first day of my vacation. I felt so happy and excited! Everybody got up early, and we ate fruit and yogurt with honey for breakfast. Then we walked to the harbor in Hurghada and looked at the pretty blue fishing boats. I saw a man in an old truck. He was selling ice to the men in the fishing boats. After that, we quickly walked to the fish market because it was getting late. Mom wanted to buy some fresh fish to cook for dinner.

It was a colorful market, and people were talking loudly. It was very exciting! We bought four big gray fish and some fresh figs. I really love figs! They're my favorite fruits. Then we went back to Grandma's house, where we were staying. In the evening, I helped Mom make Sayadeya for dinner with the fish from the market. And then we had figs and ice cream for dessert. It's my favorite! It was a great day!

Choose the correct answer:

- Talia had (yogurt honey figs fish) for dinner.
- The underlined word "They" refers to the (figs fish ice cream desserts).

	States and the second
Answer these questions:	
3. Where was Talia's vacation?	s 55
·	
4. What did Talia see at the harbor in	Pacie - 2000,000 € 19 x 200 20 x x x x x x X X X X
>	
Put the words in the correct or	der to make sentences:
in - did - the water - What - they - see	
>	?
masks - We - our - wore - faces - ove	
beautiful, - tall - sea - We - plants - sa	7.0
	Charles To Charles Control of the Co
Write a description about 'A visit	
"A visit to a ı	market"
Remember to:	did
> CAN MINARA VALL MARA SAA MINST VALL	aia.
say where you were and what youuse informal language and a mix o	f punctuation.
 use informal language and a mix o use adverbs to describe things. 	f punctuation. use different adjectives.
use informal language and a mix o	
use informal language and a mix o	
use informal language and a mix o	
use informal language and a mix o	
use informal language and a mix o	
use informal language and a mix o	

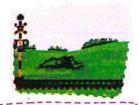
→ Step Ahead

Lesson

-Lesson 7 Story



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



railway /سکة حدید



station محطة



street lights أضواء (إنارة) الشوارع



expensive عالٍ - غالب الثمن /



dark ، مُظلم ،



another country دولة أخرى



countryside الريف



fields حقول



frightened خائف /



surprised مندهش



ر مسرور - سعید مسرور - سعید



loudly بصوتٍ عال /



flag alē,



sweater / بلوڤر



hit , یصدم - یصطدم ,



wave یُلَوِّح بیدہ



Unit 6

,	Extra Vocabulary	, کلمات إضافیة
England	إنجلترا	sunny amana
driver	سائق	windy
fox	ثعلب	noise ضوضاء

Vocabulary Study SB Student's

loudly: with a lot of noise

wave : move your hand, or something in your hand, up and down

glad: happy about something

frightened: feeling afraid because you think something bad will happen

hit: go into something quickly or hard

surprised: the feeling you have when you do not expect something

Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

A	Present	Past	A PP
visit	يزور	visited	visited
pass	يَمُر - يجتاز	passed	passed
prefer	يفضل	preferred	preferred
wave	يُلَوِّح بيده	waved	waved
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
arrive	يَصِل	arrived	arrived
surprise	يُفاجِمهُ	surprised	surprised

أفعال غير منتظمة مrregular verbs

Pre	sent 🗼	A Past A	PP A
leave	يترك - يغادر	left	left
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
hit	يصدم - يصطدم	hit	hit
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
fall	يسقط - يقع	fell	fallen



Which animal do the children hear in the night?

The Railway Children, by E. Nesbit

Roberta, Phyllis, and Peter lived in a large house in London, England. One day, their father had to leave them to work in another country 0.

"This house is too expensive for us. While Father is away 9, we must leave London and move to a smaller house in the countryside 6," said their mother.

Theirnewhousewasneara railway 0. They arrived in the night and walked to the house from the station.

"Why is it so dark?" said Roberta. At night in London, there were always lots of bright, colorful lights.

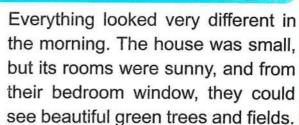
"There are no street lights of in the countryside," said their mother.

"And why is it so quiet?" asked Peter. In London, everybody walked quickly and talked loudly 6.

"There are not many people in the countryside," said their mother.

That night, the children did not sleep. It was quiet, but they could hear animals calling in the night.

"I'm frightened O," said Phyllis. "I don't like it here."



Every day, trains passed up and down the railway near their house. The children loved watching the trains. When they waved @ to the people on the train, they usually waved back to them.

One day, the children were walking near the railway. It was a very windy of day and Peter was very surprised when he saw a big old tree. It was moving!

🙆 مسافر 🕦 دولة أخرى 🗿 خط سکة حدید 👩 في الريف 👩 بصوتٍ عال 🕣 أضواء الشوارع 🔞 لۇح بىدە 🕜 خائف 🛈 متفاحئ و عاصف





Unit 6

"Look!" he said. "The tree is falling on to the railway!"

"What can we do?" said Phyllis. "A train will hit " it!"

"A train will be here soon," said Roberta. "Peter, your sweater is red. Take it off." "Why?" he asked.

"We can make a flag with it. A red flag means stop!"

They ran back along the railway to a hill ② . When the train came, they waved the sweater to stop it!

The train was very fast, but the driver saw the red sweater and quickly stopped the train before it hit the tree.

"Thank you, children!" the driver said. "You helped everybody on this

train. You did the right thing!"

That night, they heard animals calling again in the dark.

"Are you still frightened of the countryside, Phyllis?" her mother asked.

"No, I know it is just a fox," said Phyllis.

"I didn't know what it was when we first arrived here."

"I like living here," said Peter.

"I'll be glad when we go back to London," said Roberta, "but I understand life in the countryside now. It's a good place to live."

🕦 یصطدم ۲© تل ۱۵ مسرور

Exercises on Lesson (7)



Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

railway - house - country - countryside - parking

Roberta, Phyllis, and Peter lived in a large house in London, England. One day, their father had to leave them to work in another

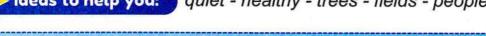
1. Then, they left London and moved to a smaller house in the 2. Their new house was near a 5. They arrived on a train and walked to the 4.

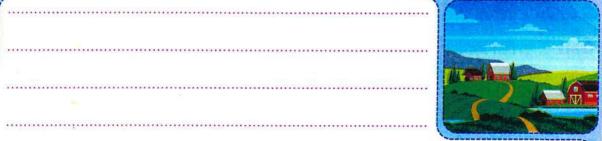


- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
- 1. They in large a house lived.
- 2. moved to We house a smaller England in.
- children The loved the watching trains.
- 4. ran They back the along railway.
- Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Living in the countryside"

ldeas to help you: quiet - healthy - trees - fields - people





Unit 6 Test 2

1 Listen and answer the questions:

Total

30

(6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (231) آخر الكتاب.

1. When was Nesma in Alexandria?

Where did Nesma go during her visit to Alexandria?

What kind of animals did Nesma enjoy seeing?

4. What did Nesma learn about?

Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list: (4Ms)

cool - stores - movie theater - fountain - architects

Nagwa: What are you doing, Dad?

Dad : I'm looking at these designs for the new shopping mall. I'm

meeting the 0 to decide on the plans tomorrow.

Nagwa: That sounds exciting. What will be in the mall?

Dad : There'll be @ selling everything — clothes stores,

shoe stores, and things for the home.

Nagwa: That's nice! Will it be too hot, though?

: No, we're planting lots of plants there to keep people 6

Nagwa: Yes, lots of new buildings have plants growing in them — or on

the roof. Is there anything else for my friends?

Dad: Yes, there's a there, and a big fountain to sit next to.

Nagwa: I can't wait to see it, Dad! Everybody will love it.

Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

El Fayoum is a town near the desert. It is in a big oasis. We can go there by car, by bus or by train. There are many fields with canals, and farmers grow many things there. North of the town, there is a big lake. It's Lake Qarun. The town is famous for its big waterwheels. Many people like to visit El Fayoum on holidays.

1	ALC: UNION	NAME OF TAXABLE PARTY.		
/	A	Chasas the	correct answer	
U		Choose the	correct answer	
•	Control of the			

- 1. El Fayoum is famous for its big (oases rivers waterwheels deserts).
- 2. The underlined word "there" refers to the (forests towns lakes fields).

(B)	Answer	these	ques	tions:

- 3. How can you go to El Fayoum?
 -
- What is the name of the lake north of El Fayoum?

The Reader | Granddad's Village

4	A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):	(5Ms
-		

- 1. Fares lived in Aswan with his parents and granddad.
- Granddad always had very helpful things to say.

Complete the following sentences:

- 2. Granddad used to go to the a lot.

Choose the correct answer:	(2Ms)
1. I can't see (something - nothing - anything - everything) in the fi	ridge to
 Builders use steel and glass to (makes - made - make - making) buildings lock modern. 	2
3. Is there (everybody - anybody - everything - somebody) in the he	ouse?
4. There is (everything - anything - something - nothing) to do that It's better to go to bed.	night.
Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:	(1M)
in - they - the planetarium - What - see - did?	
<u>></u>	?
a good - countryside - Tho - live - place - to - is	
2. a good - countryside - The - live - place - to - is.	
2. a good - countryside - The - live - place - to - is.	
The second secon	. (7Ms)
	. (7Ms)
Write an email of (50) words to your American friend Jack: Tell him about the famous places and the monuments in your cou	intry,
Write an email of (50) words to your American friend Jack: Tell him about the famous places and the monuments in your county Egypt. Tell him why tourists come to visit Egypt. Your email addre	intry, ss is
Write an email of (50) words to your American friend Jack: Tell him about the famous places and the monuments in your county Egypt. Tell him why tourists come to visit Egypt. Your email addre	intry, ss is
Write an email of (50) words to your American friend Jack: Tell him about the famous places and the monuments in your cou	intry, ss is
Write an email of (50) words to your American friend Jack: Tell him about the famous places and the monuments in your country to the famous places and the monuments in your country. Tell him why tourists come to visit Egypt. Your email address adv@school.com. Your friend's email address is jack@gmail.com. From:	intry, ss is n.
Write an email of (50) words to your American friend Jack: Tell him about the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places are the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places are the famous places and the monuments in your council to the famous places are the famous places are the famous places and the famous places are the famous pl	intry, ss is n.
Write an email of (50) words to your American friend Jack: Tell him about the famous places and the monuments in your counce Egypt. Tell him why tourists come to visit Egypt. Your email address fady@school.com. Your friend's email address is jack@gmail.com From: To:	intry, ss is n.
Write an email of (50) words to your American friend Jack: Tell him about the famous places and the monuments in your counce Egypt. Tell him why tourists come to visit Egypt. Your email address fady@school.com. Your friend's email address is jack@gmail.com From: To:	intry, ss is n.
Write an email of (50) words to your American friend Jack: Tell him about the famous places and the monuments in your county to the famous places and the monuments in your county to the famous places and the monuments in your county fall him why tourists come to visit Egypt. Your email address fady@school.com. Your friend's email address is jack@gmail.com From: To: Subject:	intry, ss is n.
Write an email of (50) words to your American friend Jack: Tell him about the famous places and the monuments in your counter Egypt. Tell him why tourists come to visit Egypt. Your email address fady@school.com. Your friend's email address is jack@gmail.com From: To: Subject:	intry, ss is n.
Write an email of (50) words to your American friend Jack: Tell him about the famous places and the monuments in your counter Egypt. Tell him why tourists come to visit Egypt. Your email address fady@school.com. Your friend's email address is jack@gmail.com From: To: Subject:	intry, ss is n.

Marrin 7







(6Ms)

1 Listen and answer the questions:

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (231) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. Where are Lara and her family spending their vacation?
- 2. When does Lara's family go camping?
 - <u>></u>
- 3. How does Lara usually help her dad?
- 4. Who takes the food for the picnic?
- Read and complete the following text with the words from the list: (4Ms)

paths - planetarium - aquarium - theater - Citadel

Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

Hi, I'm Nesma. I love going to the park on the weekend. I meet my friends there, and we play games. It's a beautiful place, and everything in the park is <u>clean</u>. Nobody leaves garbage or drops litter. There's always something to see or do. Everybody in my family loves the park, too. Sometimes my mom and I play with my little sister Dalia, and my dad plays football with my brother Waleed.

Rarm

Connect Plus 5

Choose the correct answer:

- The opposite of the underlined word "clean" is (beautiful happy dirty - good).
- Nesma's dad plays (basketball football handball tennis) with her brother Waleed.

Answer these questions:

- 3. Where does Nesma like to go on the weekend?
- 4. Describe the park according to the text.

The Reader

Granddad's Village

A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(5Ms)

- 1. The family moved from Aswan because the father had a new job. (
- 2. Fares and Waleed became good friends. (

Complete the following sentences:

- 3. used to live in the same village as Granddad.
- 4. moved to Fares's apartment building with his mom and dad.

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

- 1. Swimming is (more less less than the most) popular sport in our family. We love it!
- Watching TV is (the least the most more than less) dangerous than skiing.
- 3. I love going to museums (learns learning to learn learn) about the past.

रिस्ता १

Step Ahead

4. Is there (anybody - somebody - anything - nothing) special you to do?	ou want
6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:	(1M)
1. Giza - The - Grand - Museum - Egyptian - in - is.	
2. camping - did - Amira - Where - go - yesterday? Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements	? nts:(7Ms)
"Your trip to Al-Fayoum"	
last week - friends - Wadi El-Rayan - waterwheels - waterfalls - Lake Qarun - Wadi Al-Hitan - camping	
100	

Theme (4) I'm a responsible person

Unit 7





- In this unit I will learn words for talking about sleep. understand a story about the moon.
- give advice about how to sleep well. learn about the best times to do things.
- do a healthy habits quiz.
- use if to give advice.
- understand the tides and how they can affect us.
- learn about how to be careful in hot weather.
- write an information leaflet about how to stay cool and safe.
 - understand a story about King Canute and the tides.

Objectives

Words related to sleep: body clock, bright, darkness, full moon, moonlight, sleepy, wide

awake

Words related to tides: Earth, gravity, high/low tides, moon

Words from stories: bottom, disobey, edge, fair, intelligent, main effect, obey, officer,

shout, throne

Language

- If you don't sleep well, you feel bad during the day.
- When you go to bed, you shouldn't have your electronic devices with you.
- It's too early to go in the water.
- I wasn't patient enough to listen to your advice.

Reading - A story about a child who cannot sleep; a health quiz; a play about safety in the swimming pool; a story about a family rescued from a high tide; the story of King Canute

Writing - Writing advice; organizing and writing a leaflet using so that to give a reason and explanation for something

Speaking - Talking about sleep; giving advice and discussion healthy habits; acting a play; giving reasons for something

Listening A discussion about the best times of day to do things; a play

Life skills - Problem solving: writing safety leaflets

Science appreciation: understanding the tides

Values - Curiosity

- Appreciation of science

Issues and challenges - Environmental responsibility

- Preventative health

Integrated cross-curriculum topics Science: how the moon affects the tides

Lesson

Lesson 1 Sleep



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



sleepy يشعر بالنعاس



wide awake مستيقظ تمامًا



body clock , الساعة البيولوچية للجسم



full moon , قمر مكتمل (بدر)



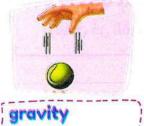
moonlight ضوء القمر



darkness الظلام (الظُلمة)



around the earth , حول الأرض







day time النهار



,	Extra Vocabulary		كلمات إضافية	A,
mainly	بشكل رئيسي - في الأساس	tonight		الليلة
half moon	نصف القمر	thick		سمیك
interesting	مثير للإعجاب - شيِّق	outside	- بالخارج	في الخارج - خارج
tired	مُرْهَق - مُتعَب	usual tin	ne	الوقت المعتاد

Activity Book midnight مستحير round بعض الليل flashlight مصباح يدوي - كشاف bright عصباح يدوي - كشاف

Expressions & Prepositions



Term 2

102

Step Ahead



Vocabulary Study S B Student's Book

REPAIRON SERVICES	Book		
a full moon	: the time of the month when we can see all of one side of the moon		
moonlight	: the light from the moon		
body clock	: something in your body that tells you when to sleep, wake up, and eat		
darkness	: when there is no light		
bright	: with a lot of light		
be wide awake	: feel like you can't or don't want to sleep		
be sleepy	: feel like you need to go to bed and sleep		

Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

	Present	Past	PP
start	يبدأ	started	started
affect	يُؤَثِّر على	affected	affected
pull	يسحب	pulled	pulled
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	learned (learnt)
change	يَتغيَر - يُغيِّر	changed	changed
close	يغلق	closed	closed
call	ينادي	called	called
stop	يتوقف	stopped	stopped

Term 2

Connect Plus 5

أفعال غير منتظمة ماrregular verbs

	Present		Past	PP .
light		ينير - يضيء	lit	lit
wake up		يستيقظ	woke up - waked up	woken up - waked up
sleep		ينام	slept	slept
fall		يقع - يسقط	fell	fallen
feel		يشعر	felt	felt
know		يعرف	knew	known
take		يستغرق	took	taken
shine		يلمع	shone - shined	shone - shined
get out		يخرج	got out	got out



We spend around one-third of our lives sleeping.

نحن نقضي حوالي ثلث عمرنا نائمين.





Read and learn

What problem does Marwan have?

Story: Marwan and the moon

Marwan lives by the sea ①. One evening, he went to bed at the usual time, but he could not sleep. He heard his mom go past his bedroom door and said, "Mom, I can't sleep! I'm wide awake ②! I'm not sleepy ③ at all!"

Mom came in his room and looked outside the window.

"I know why you can't sleep," she said. "We have a full moon of tonight.

Look." Marwan got out of bed and looked at the moon.

"It's very beautiful, isn't it?" he said. Mom said, "It is. Look how the moonlight of shines on the sea."

"But Mom," said Marwan, "why does the full moon stop me sleeping?"

- 🛈 بالقرب من البحر
- 🗿 مستيقظ تمامًا
- 🔞 لا أشعر بالنعاس
 - 🕢 قمر مکتمل
 - 5 ضوء القمر

िटना 2

"Well," said Mom, "it takes about 28 days for the moon to go around the Earth. When there is a full moon, we can see all of one side of the moon lit by the sun . Some people think that a full moon changes our body clocks . The moon's gravity oculd affect our sleep of, too." "So, the moon's gravity is stopping me sleeping," said Marwan.

6) يُضاء بواسطة الشمس

🕜 اساعات ببولوچیة 8) جاذبیة ''ن مر

🧿 تۇثر على نومنا

🕡 ىشكل أساسىي

النهار 🛈

😰 ستارة سميكة

📵 غرب ظلام (مُظلمة)

🐠 د يا خنبون

📵 دخل في النوم

"Yes, but it's mainly because the full moon is very bright, so our body clocks think it's still day time ."

"That's very interesting, Mom," said Marwan, "but I need to get up early to help Dad. We're going fishing. I'll be really tired if I can't get to sleep."

"No problem," said Mom, "I'm going to put this thick curtain @ across the window."

As soon as Mom did this, the room was in darkness and Marwan started to feel sleepy. Within ten minutes, he fell asleep to and slept very well until morning.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

light - clocks - moon - gravity - Earth

The full moon stops people sleeping. The moon takes about 28 days to go around the
. When there is a full
. When there is a full
. The moon's
could affect our sleep.

106

Complete the story summary with these words:



Step Ahead

awake – body clocks – bright – darkness – full – mom – moon – moonlight – sleepy

his 🥹 to help him sleep. She said his bedroom was					
too 🔞 because of the 🐠 moon. They					
looked at the 6on the sea, and Mom explained how the					
full 🌀					
curtains and the room was in 🛭					
and he was soon asleep.					
3 Complete the sentences with the words from the box:					
darkness - body clock - wide awake - full - moonlight - sleepy - bright					
darkness - body clock - wide awake - full - moonlight - sleepy - bright					
darkness - body clock - wide awake - full - moonlight - sleepy - bright					
1. Tamer felt, so he went to bed. 2. We couldn't see anything in the, so we used a					
1. Tamer felt, so he went to bed. 2. We couldn't see anything in the, so we used a flashlight.					
1. Tamer felt					

thinks it's bedtime now!

4	Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. does - Why - full moon - the - me - stop - sleeping?

?

2. the - Put - curtain - the - window - across.

3. fell - He - asleep - minutes - ten - within.

4. helps - What - you - get - to - sleep?

Write an email of (50) words to tour friend Hazem:

Tell him about the importance of sleep and how it's important to have a healthy life. Tell him what you do before and after you sleep and how many hours you sleep per night. Your email address is amr@yahoo.com, and your friend's email address is hazem@gmail.com.

To:

Subject:

Unit 7





Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



sports coach مدرب ریاضی



advice - tip نصيحة



late وقت متأخر



tired مُرْهَق - مُثْعَب



bedtime وقت النوم ,



difference فَرْق - اختلاف



have a bath يأخذ حمام



have a shower یأخذ دُش



muscle قلفد



brain مُخ



digest پیهضم



electronic devices أجهزة إلكترونية

,======	Extra Vocabulary	ت إضافية	ر کلمان
body	جسم	meal	وجبة
phones	هواتف	finally	أخيرًا
tips	نصائح	street lights	أضواء (إنارة) الشارع
tablets	أجهزة لوحية - تابلت	loud music	موسيقي صاخبة
hungry	جوعان - جائع	noise	<u>ض</u> وضاء

Activity Book

football coach	مدرب كرة قدم	thirsty	عطشان
kick the ball	يركل الكرة	sleep easily	ينام بسهولة
close to	قریب من	give advice	يُقَدِّم نصيحة
warm milk	حلیب دافئ	describe a fact	يصف حقيقة
headache	صداع	instructions	تعليمات
enough water	ماءِ كافٍ	children	أطفال

Expressions & Prepositions



Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Pre	sent	Past	A PP
relax	يسترخب	relaxed	relaxed
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
kick	يركل	kicked	kicked
try	يحاول	tried	tried
study	يدرس	studied	studied

onnect Plus 5

A Pr	esent	Past A	PP
keep	يحتفظ - يُبقي - يظل	kept	kept
give	يعطي	gave	given
read	يقرأ	read	read
understand	يفهم	understood	understood



Read and learn



A sports coach giving advice

- Coach: Hi! Great to see everybody! I want to talk to you about something very important this morning: sleep o. Why do you think sleep is important?
- Younis : So we don't feel tired during the day.
- Yes! When you don't sleep well, you feel bad during the day. You can't study or do your best at sports. So here are some tips of for how to sleep well. First, if you don't feel sleepy of at bedtime of, have a shower or bath. This will help your body and muscles of to relax. Does anybody do this?
- Fares : Not always, but I always have a shower in the morning.
- Coach: Try changing this and you should see a difference o. Tip number two: If you need to go to sleep soon, don't use phones or tablets close to bedtime o. When you go to bed, you shouldn't have your electronic devices on with you.
- Younis : Why, Coach?
- Coach : Because your brain keeps working o hard, and it can't relax.

- 🕧 النوم
- 🕢 النصائح
- 쥥 تشعر بالنعاس
 - 🗿 وقت النوم
 - 😏 عضلات
 - 6 اختلاف
- وقت النوم من وقت النوم
- اًجهزة إلكترونيةيستمر في العمل

Another tip: Don't eat a big meal close to bedtime. When you eat a big meal, your body has to work too hard to digest to the food. Does anyone here read books at bedtime?

Fares : Yes, I do!

Coach : Good. If you want to feel sleepy, read a good book at bedtime. Don't go to bed too late — around 10 pm is great. And finally, your bedroom should be dark when you 🕦 پهضم sleep. If the street lights o are bright outside

> your room, make sure o you have good curtains. Also, don't listen to loud music in

bed.

Younis: OK, thanks Coach!

🛈 أضواء الشارع

😥 احرص علی

Grammar Study

Giving Advice اسداء النصح

Tip!

- يمكن إسداء النصح بعدة طرق منها: .There are so many ways to give advice
- We use the infinitive without to, to give the advice, for example:

نستخدم الفعل في المصدر في بداية الجملة بدون (to) أو (Don't) ثم المصدر:

Have a bath.

- Don't look at your phone.
- We can give advice by using (should shouldn't).

يمكننا إسداء النصح باستخدام (should - shouldn't) ويُثْبَعَا بالمصدر.

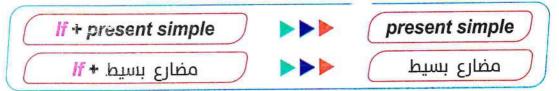
- You should get up early.
- Your bedroom should be dark when you sleep.
- When you go to bed, you shouldn't have your electronic devices with you.
- We shouldn't eat too much sweet food.



■ We can use the zero, first, or second conditionals to give advice and instructions.

يمكن استخدام الحالات الصفرية والأولم والثانية لوصف مشكلة أو إسداء النصح أو إعطاء تعليمات:

The Zero Conditional (If)



Example:

If you don't sleep well, you feel bad during the day.

The First Conditional (If)

Examples:

- If you go to bed early, you won't be late in the morning.
- ► Have a shower or bath if you don't feel sleepy at bedtime.
- If you need to go to sleep soon, don't use phones or tablets close to bedtime.

The Second Conditional (If)

Examples:

- If I were you, I would drink a glass of milk every day.
- If I were you, I wouldn't waste my time.

Exercises on Lesson (2)

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

sleepy - shouldn't - should - bedtime - bath

Here are some tips	for how to sleep w	vell. First, if you don't fee
		ower or 2
		ax. When you go to bed, you
6 hav	e your electronic devi	ces with you. Don't eat a big
meal close to bedtime	. And finally, your be	droom @ be
dark when you sleep.		

Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

tablets - bedtime - tips - relax - brain

: Hi! Great to see everybody! Why do you think sleep is Coach

important?

: So we don't feel tired during the day. Younis

: Yes! Here are some o for how to sleep well. Coach

First, if you don't feel sleepy at @, have a

shower or bath.

Fares : But I always have a shower in the morning.

: Try changing this. Tip number two: If you need to go to sleep Coach

soon, don't use phones or 6 close to bedtime.

Younis : Why, Coach?

: Because your brain keeps working hard, and it can't Coach

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. (Tried Tries Try Trying) changing this, and you should see a difference.
- 2. (Do Does Did Don't) go to bed too late.
- 3. Don't (eat ate eats eating) a big meal close to bedtime.
- 4. You (can doesn't should shouldn't) listen to loud music in bed.
- 5. You (should doesn't shouldn't can't) drink a glass of milk every day.
- 6. We (can aren't should shouldn't) play that video game again. It's scary.
- 7. They (should don't shouldn't can't) be happy. They won the competition.
- She shouldn't (sit sat sits sitting) in the living room all day.
- 9. He should (helped helps help helping) with the housework.
- 10. I (will doesn't would wouldn't) be really tired if I can't get to sleep.
- 11. If you sleep well, you (felt feels feel are feeling) fresh during the day.
- 12. If she (eats eating eat doesn't eat) her breakfast, she will be hungry.
- 13. If you get up early, you (will can won't would) miss the bus.
- 14. He will waste water if he always (has have will have having) baths.
- 15. If mom (wakes will wake waking doesn't wake) me up, I will get up late.
- 16. If he eats his sandwiches, he (is should will be won't be) hungry.
- 17. If I (am are have were) you, I'd ask the teacher's advice.
- 18. If I had your telephone number, I (will would can't won't) phone you.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. listen to music loud Don't in bed.
- 2. you Do read at bedtime books?
- 3. I a shower always in the morning have.

4. go - too - Don't - to - late - bed.

Lesson 3 When to do things



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



healthy habits عادات صحية



تَوَازُن صحب



healthy food طعام صحب



مشروبات غازية



exercise ممارسة الرياضة - تمرين





وقت للتواصل الاجتماعي



relationships

, Ex	ra Vocabulary		كلمات إضافية	L=======,
candy	حلوب	strong		قوي
pieces of fruit	قِطَع فاكهة	hours		ساعات
outside world	العالم الخارجي	online		علي الإنترنت
heart	قلب مولاهن	early		مبكرًا
fresh air	هواء منعش - نقي	useful	د	مفيد - نافع - مفي





Expressions & Prepositions

interested in

مهتم بـ

You can be your best.

يمكن أن تكون في أفضل حالاتك.

feel better

يشعر بتحسُّن

put together

نجمع ... سويًا - نجمع ... معًا

get enough sleep

يحصل علم قسط كافٍ من النوم

put away

يضع بعيدًا

through the day

خلال اليوم

per day

في اليوم

agree with

يتفق مع

of your age

في نفس عمرك

instead of

بدلاً من

for eight hours

لمدة ثماني ساعات

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Pr	esent 🛕	Past A	PP A
enjoy	یستمتع بـ	enjoyed	enjoyed
walk	یمشی	walked	walked
remember	يتذكر	remembered	remembered
achieve	يحقق - ينجز	achieved	achieved
talk	يتكلم	talked	talked
try	يجرب	tried	tried
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
exercise	يتمرن	exercised	exercised

Lesson

Preso	ent 🗼	Past	A PP
put together	نجمع معًا	put together	put together
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
spend "time"	يقضي (وقت)	spent "time"	spent "time"
find	یجد	found	found

Read and learn

Do you think you have a healthy balance in your life?

Healthy habits

Find a healthy balance of play and exercise, healthy food, water, social time of, and good sleep. When you put together of all these things, you can be your best and achieve of everything you want. Put your phone away when you can and enjoy the outside world with your family and friends. If you have healthy habits of, you feel strong, happy, and have good relationships of.



- 🕡 تَوَازُن صحب
- 🧿 وقت للتواصل الاجتماعي
- 쥥 نجمع ... معًا 🐠 يُحَقِّق يُنْجِز
 - عادات صحية 🜀 علاقات

Tip for a healthy body

- 1. Everybody of your age should drink six to eight glasses of water a day.

 أب شخص في مثل عُمرك يجب أن يشرب من ستة إلى ثمانية أكواب من الماء يوميًا.
- 2. Try not to drink many sodas; they are not good for your heart or teeth. حاول ألا تشرب الكثير من الصودا؛ فهي ليست صحية لقلبك وأسنانك.
- 3. Everybody of your age should exercise for one hour per day this can be playing with friends, going out on your bike, walking to school, or swimming. أي شخص في مثل عُمرِك يجب أن يتمرن لمدة ساعة يوميًا يمكن أن يتم هذا عبر الله المدرسة أو ممارسة السباحة.



lonneet Plus 5

117

- 4. Try not to spend more than two hours a day online.
 - حاول أَلا تقضٰي أكثر من ساعتين في اليوم على شبكة الإنترنت.
- 5. If you eat about five pieces of fruit per day, you feel better. Try to eat fruit instead of candy.
- لـو تناولـت خمس قطع من الفاكهـة يوميًا، فسوف تشعر بتحسن. حاول أن تأكل الفاكهـة بدلاً من الحلوم.
- 6. Try to go to bed at 9 or 10 pm so you get enough sleep.
- حاول أن تذهب إلى السرير في حوالي الساعة التاسعة إلى العاشرة مساءًا حتى تنال قِسطٍ كافٍ من النـوم.
- 7. Everybody of your age should sleep for eight to ten hours a night.
 - أي شخص في مثل عُمرك يجب أن ينام من ثماني إلى عشر ساعات كل ليلة.

Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

healthy - achieve - social - habits - balance

It's very important to have a healthy life. To be healthy, you should have a healthy of play and exercise, healthy food, water, fime, and good sleep. When you put together all these things, you can be your best and everything you want. Put your phone away when you can and enjoy the outside world with your family and friends. If you have healthy have healthy your family and have good relationships.



Step Ahead

3	Read and complete the from the list:	following	text with	the words
	from the list:			



			•	d	a	ı	1	_	•	91	n	jc)	,	-	1	u	ır	1	_	r	i	g	h	t			p	L	a	y			b	0	У	,			
=	-	=	-			=	=	=	=	=	=		-	-	=	=	=	=	=	=	-	=	Ξ	=	=	=	-	-	=	=	•	=	-	=	=	-	***	=	=	=

Here are some healthy habits. Find time for sports and 0
Eat good food every 9
9
•

3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

In the past, life was different. People were poor, and life was difficult, but they were happy. There wasn't a metro. There weren't lots of cars or tall buildings. There were small houses to live in. But there was healthy food to eat. Life was healthy, calm and quiet. They had time to play. They had time to rest. They had time to sit and speak with each other. I think life in the past was happier than life today.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. People were (happy sad bad angry) in the past.
- The opposite of the underlined word "healthy" is (healthier healthiest unhealthy unhappy).

.......

Answer these questions:

- 3. What did people have time to do in the past?
- 4. Describe people's houses in the past.



- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
 - 1 a healthy balance life your in Do you have?

 - 2. time What you do bed go to?
 - 3. should You water every drink day.
 - 4. a night should We sleep eight hours for.
- 5 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"The rules for a healthy life"

ldeas to help you:

balance - exercise - food - social time playing sports - using phones



Lesson 4 💮 A play





الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



swimming pool ر حمام سباحة



bottom of the pool , قاع حمام السباحة



deep عميق



dangerous



hit يرتطم - يصطدم



hurt ٍيجرح - يُؤْلِم



يهضم



advice نصيحة

patient صبور

be careful کن حذرًا

old enough كبير بما فيه الكفاية

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

each person beautiful day

encouragement

carefully angry بحذر - بحرص

later کل شخص

quickly x slowly یوم جمیل

بسر عة x ببطء

بصوتٍ عالٍ x بصوتٍ منخفضِ **loudly × quietly** تشجيع

غاضب

في وقت لاحق

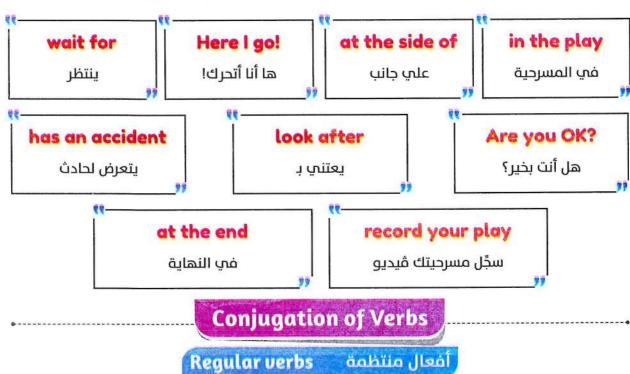
Connect Plus 5

happy x sad قَدَم

سعید x حزین

Activity Book			
disagree with	غير متفِق مع - يختلف مع	arm	ذراع
child	طفل	head	رأس
accident	حادثة	responsible	مسؤول
deep enough	عميق بما فيه الكفاية	rude	غير مُهَّذَّب - وقح

Expressions & Prepositions



Pre	sent	Past	A PP
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
visit	يزور	visited	visited
jump	يقفز	jumped	jumped
digest	يهضم	digested	digested
follow	يَتَّبِع - يَتْبَع	followed	followed

→ Step Ahead

Lesson

	Present	Past	PP
respect	يحترم	respected	respected
act	يُمَثِّل	acted	acted
arrive	يَصِل	arrived	arrived
practice	يتمرن - يمارس	practiced	practiced
disagree	يرفض	disagreed	disagreed
happen	וברני	happened	happened

أفعال غير منتظمة 💎 Irregular verbs

Present		Past	PP)	
hit	یصدم - یضرب - یصطدم	hit	hit	
hurt	يجرح - يؤلم	hurt	hurt	
swim	يسبح	swam	swum	
speak	يتحدث بيتحدث بالمعادة المعاددة	spoke	spoken	
make	يصنع - يجعل	made	made	
break	يكسر	broke	broken	

Read and learn

Read the play. What happens to Ibrahim?

Ibrahim, Shady, and Seif arrive at the swimming pool. It's a beautiful day.

Ibrahim: Let's jump in the water now.

Shady: We shouldn't go swimming yet, we've just had our lunch!

Seif : Shady's right. It's too early to go in the water. Let's wait for our food to digest.

Ibrahim: Seif, you can't tell me what to do, you're not old enough. You're only seven! I'm going to jump in the water.

Shady: Ibrahim, the water isn't deep enough here. It's dangerous to jump in water that isn't very deep. You will hit the bottom of the pool.

Ibrahim: Here I go!

Ibrahim jumps in the water. He hurts his foot.

Ibrahim: Ow!

Seif : Are you OK? Sit at the side of the pool.

Ibrahim: Thank you, Seif! I'm very sorry. I wasn't patient enough to listen

to your and Shady's advice.

Shady : Does your foot hurt too much to walk on it?

Ibrahim: No, it's OK. I'm just happy you and Seif were here. What would

I do without my friends?

When you are going to ast a plays

- 1. Listen to the original play well.
- 2. Decide who will be each person.
- 3. Try to copy the person you will be in the play.
- 4. Listen again to the original play for the following:
 - a. How do they speak? Are they happy, sad, excited, or angry?
 - b. Do they speak quickly or slowly, loudly or quietly?
- 5. Practice the play with your group. Do the correct actions as you speak to make it more interesting.
- 6. Present your play to your teacher. Listen to the teacher's advice.
- 7. Present your play to your class.
- 8. If you can, record your plays so you can watch them again later.

عادما البيد المساهية والمشال مسرهية

- 1. استمع جيدًا للمسرحية الأصلية.
- 2. قرر من سیقوم بأداء کل دور.
- 3- حاول أن تُقلّد الشخصية التي ستقوم بأدائها.
- استمع مرة أخرى للمسرحية الأصلية وركز مع:
- أ. كيف تتحدث الشخصيات؟ هل هم سعداء، أم حزانم، أم متحمسون، أم غاضبون؟
 - ب. هل يتحدثون بسرعة أم ببطء؟ بصوتٍ عالٍ أم بهدوء؟
- تمرن على المسرحية مع إملائك. قم بعمل الحركات الصحيحة المناسبة لما تتحدث به لتجعل تمثيلك ممتعًا أكثر.
 - .6 قم بعرض المسرحية على معلمك واستمع إلى نصيحته.
 - .7 قم بعرض المسرحية على الفصل.
 - إن استطعت، قم بتسجيل مسرحياتك ڤيديو حتى تستطيع مشاهدتها لاحقًا.

Grammar Study 🌊



enough - too - too much

- (صفة adj) وصفة too) 🍆 🏲 جدًّا جدًّا (أزيد من اللازم)
- enough (صفة adj كافِ-كفاية الله عنه عنه الله عنه علم الله عنه الله عنه الل enough
- أكثر من اللازم 🕨 🏲 📂 (to+inf. / uncountable nouns) **♦** too much

<u>Examples:</u>

- Ahmed likes basketball, but he is too short.
 - He isn't tall enough to play it.

He can't play basketball because he is short.

- I want to carry this box, but it's too big.
 - It isn't small enough.

I can't carry this box because it's big.

- My foot hurts too much to walk on it.
- There is too much water in the glass.
 - 📢 (👥) تُتْبَع بصفة وتُعْطي معنى النفي.
 - (enough) تأتي قبلها الصفة.
 - (too much) ويأتي بعدها اسم لا يعد أو (to + inf.) ﴿



Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

advice - patient - to - too - dangerous

Shady : Ibrahim, the water isn't deep enough here. It's 0 to jump in water that isn't very deep. You will hit the bottom of the pool.



Ibrahim: Here I go!

Ibrahim jumps in the water. He hurts his foot.

Ibrahim: Ow!

Seif: Are you OK? Sit at the side of the pool.

Ibrahim: Thank you, Seif! I'm very sorry. I wasn't o

enough to listen to your and Shady's 6

Shady Does your foot hurt o much to walk on it?

Ibrahim: No, it's OK. I'm just happy you and Seif were here. What

would I do without my friends?

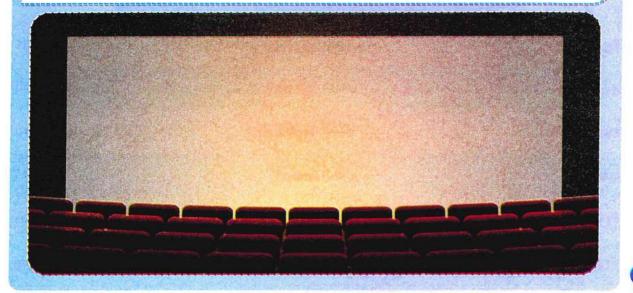
Choose the correct answer:

- 1. You can't tell me what to do, you're not (enough old too enough old enough to enough).
- 2. Mustafa is (too two to toe) short to play basketball.
- 3. The box is too (heavy heavier than heavier heaviest) for me to carry.
- 4. The water isn't deep (too enough enough too very) here. It's dangerous to jump in water that isn't very deep.
- 5. I'm very sorry. I wasn't (patient enough too patient enough patient patient too) to listen to your advice.
- 6. The weather was (to too too many enough) cold for me to go out.
- 7. The baby isn't old (too much to too enough much) to feed himself.
- 8. The lion is (strong too strong stronger the strongest) enough to kill the deer.
- 9. He is clever (too enough too much very) to get the full mark.
- 10. My grandma is (too to enough much) old to run.
- 11. The elephant is (enough strong strong enough strong too strong to) to break the tree.
- 12. The dress was (to expensive enough expensive expensive too too expensive) for her to buy.
- 13. He isn't fast (too too much to much enough) to win the race.
- 14. He is strong (too many much enough) to move the desk.





- 1. you Would like go to swimming?
- 3. water The is dangerous and deep.
- 4. jumps Ibrahim and his foot hurts.
- 5. would What we friends without do?
- 4 Choose a group of your friends and act out a play altogether:
 - Remember to choose a play you can act.
 - Choose a suitable character for each one in the group.
 - Practice well and present your play to your teacher before presenting it to your class.



Lesson 5 The tides



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



tides المد والجزر



coast ساحل



around the earth) حول الأرض



main effect تأثیر رئیسی



، منخفِض / منخفِض



high عالِ /



deep عمیق



shallow , ضَحْل (غیر عمیق)

Extre	a Vocabulary	ات إقافية	م کلم
fantastic	رائع ٧	vriter	کاتب
careful	ا حریص	each	شاطمأ
beautiful	ا جمیل	arbor	مرفأ - ميناء
below	اً أسفل	oat	قارب
frightened	م خائف - مرتعب	ocks	صخور
fisherman	صیاد سمك	lrawing (n)	رسمة



Expressions & Prepositions

along the coast

علي امتداد الساحل

on the opposite side

في الجهة المقابلة

went for a walk

ذهب للتمشية

get into danger

يتعرض للخطر

twice every day

مرتين يوميًا

point to

يشير إلي

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Preser	nt 💄	Past	PP A
shout	يصرخ - يصيح	shouted	shouted
thank	يشكر	thanked	thanked
pull	يسحب	pulled	pulled
control	يتحكم في	controlled	controlled
cause	يُسَبِّب	caused	caused
cry	يبكي معكومه	cried	cried
point	يشير	pointed	pointed
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
cover	يغطي	covered	covered
affect	يؤثرعلي	affected	affected
push	يدفع	pushed	pushed

DID YOU

	rregular verbs	ال غير منتظمة	افع
Pres	sent)	Past	PP
run	يجري	ran	run
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
take	يأخذ	took	taken
go home	يذهب للبيت	went home	gone home
take back	يُرْجِع	took back	taken back
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn

The Bay of Fundy in Canada has the highest tides in the world. The difference between high and low tides is more than 12 meters. In the Mediterranean, it is a few centimeters!



خليج فندي بكندا لديه أعلى منسوب للمد في العالم. الفارق بين المد والجزر فيه أكثر من 12 متر. بينما في البحر المتوسط، الفارق بضعة سنتيمترات فقط!



Why was the family on the rocks frightened?

Story: Saved from the sea

My uncle is a fisherman and he lives someone down there!' like to go walking along the coast beach. because it's beautiful. Last time we went to see him, we went for a walk @ late in the afternoon. Then I heard someone shouting from the beach below us.

"Uncle," I said, "I think there's

near the sea. When we visit him, we I pointed to 9 the people on the

"Oh, dear! Not again!" said Uncle. We ran down to the beach. There were two parents and a child on some rocks in the 🚺 ذهبنا للتمشية sea. The tide 6

🗿 أشرت إلى 📵 المد

was coming in, and there was water "There are two things that cause all around them. They were very the tides: the moon and the sun," frightened and the child was crying. he said. "But the main effect @ "Help me with the boat!" shouted o is from the moon. When it moves Uncle. He had a small boat on the around the Earth, its gravity o beach, so we got in it and went pulls the water on Earth towards it.

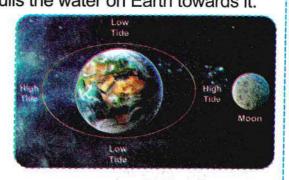
quickly to the family. They were very happy when we took them back to the beach. They thanked us very much, then they went home.

After this, we went back to Uncle's house to have dinner with the This causes a high tide in the water family. We told everyone about what nearest the moon. On the opposite happened o.

"Why did this happen?" asked my little sister.

"When the family walked to the rocks, the tide was low," said Uncle. "But then the tide came in and the water was too deep of for them to walk to the beach."

"But what causes the tides @?" I asked him.



side of Earth, the moon's gravity pulls the Earth away from the water. so you get another high tide. So on two sides of the Earth we have the high tides and on the other two sides of the Earth we have the low tides.

Look, I'm going to do a drawing for you; here it is."



🧿 جاذبیته

"That's fantastic!" I said. "So the moon is strong enough to pull all that water!

How often to do we get high tides?" "Twice every day," said Uncle.

"That's why people should be careful and understand the tides before they go to the beach. If they don't understand the tides, they can get into danger, like we saw today."

🕧 كم عدد المرات

Exercises on Lesson (5



Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

Earth - gravity - high - moon - tides

The moon has the main effect on the tides. It goes around the 1 Its 2 pulls the water on Earth towards it. We then have the 6 tides on two sides of the Earth and the low on the other sides of the Earth. High tides happen about every 12 hours.

Read the following text and answer the questions:

There are two things that cause the tides: the moon and the sun. But the main effect is from the moon. When it moves around the Earth, its gravity pulls the water on Earth towards it. This causes a high tide in the water nearest the moon. On the opposite side of Earth, the moon's gravity pulls the Earth away from the water, so we get another high tide. So on two sides of the Earth we have the high tides, and on the other two sides of the Earth we have the low tides.

Choose the correct answer:

- The main cause of the tide is the (sun star moon cloud).
- The underlined word "it" refers to the (Earth moon sun gravity).



- 3. How many high tides are there on Earth at one time?
- 4. What happens on the side of the Earth opposite the moon?

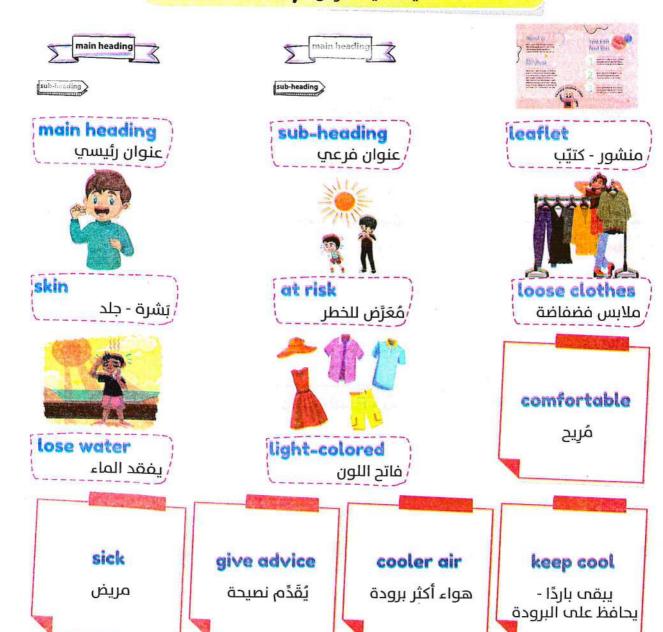
3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. frightened rocks the family on the Why was?
- 2. | with my near family the sea live.
- 3. like We walking the along coast.
-
- 4. tides What causes the?
- 5. The moves moon around Earth the.
- <u>></u>
- 6. shouting beach heard I someone from the.
- >
- 7. down ran We the to beach.

Lesson 6 Writing a leaflet



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Term 2

كلمات إضافية Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية photos مور older people الأطفال الصغار young children بسرعة

134

→ Step Ahead

Lesson (

rooms	غُرَف	sweets	حلویات - حلوہ
protected	محمي	sunglasses	نظارة شمس
curtains	ستائر	attractive	جذاب
healthy food	طعام صحب	dangerous	خطیر
salt	ملح	the best	الأفضل

Activity I	
V - V ab at 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	7 8 7 8 7 6
THE LEWIS LINE	

Activity Book			
museums	متاحف	learn information	يتعلم معلومات
sports centers	مراكز رياضية	hiking boots مات طويلة	أحذية للمشي لمساذ
thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية	have an accident	يتعرض لحادثة
dust storm	عاصفة ترابية	alone	بمفرده
get lost	يضل الطريق - يتوه	trash	قمامة
compass	بوصلة	get burned	يحترق يحترق
plan (n)	خُطة	get dark	تُظْلِم
environment	بيئة المراقص المراق	go camping	يذهب للتخييم
weather	طقس	stay safe	يبقب آمنًا

Expressions & Prepositions

feel comfortable get headaches during the day at home أثناء النهار يشعر بالراحة يصاب بالصداع في البيت get thirsty at night go hiking in danger يذهب للمشي معرض للخطر يشعر بالعطش في الليل لمسافات طويلة

Connect Plus 5



so that

لِکي - بحيث

stay healthy

حافظ على صحتك

Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

Present	A	Past A	PP A
stay	يبقى	stayed	stayed
protect	تحمت	protected	protected
respect	يحترم	respected	respected

أمعال غير منتظمة anairegular verbs

	Present	Past	PP
lose	يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost
come in	يدخل	came in	come in
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
forget	ينسب	forgot	forgotten
have fun	يستمتع - يمرح	had fun	had fun
keep	يظل - يبقى	kept	kept
fall	يسقط - يقع	fell	fallen
leave	يترك	left	left

Tip!

- When writing a leaflet, choose an interesting main heading and add sub-headings.
- Use different expressions to give advice.
- Do your research so that you have interesting things to say.
- Use attractive photos and pictures.
 - ◄ عندما تكتب منشورًا، قم باختيار عنوان رئيسي شيِّق ثم قم بإضافة عناوين فرعية.
 - ◄ استخدم تعبيرات مختلفة لإسداء النصح.
 - ◄ قم بعمل بحث لكب يكون لديك أشياء قيَّمة لتقولها.
 - استخدم صورًا أو رسومات جذابة.



Read and learn

main heading

sub-heading

How to keep cool at home

Who is at risk?

Older people > Young children

People who are sick

Why is heat dangerous?

- Your body may lose water and salt quickly.
- You may get headaches.



Tips for keeping cool:

- Close your curtains during the day so that the sun will not make the rooms hot.
- Wear light-colored, loose clothes so that you will feel more comfortable.
- Drink lots of water so that you can stay well.
- Open your windows at night so that cooler air can come in.

giving advice

photo

Activity Book Text

Staying safe when you go hiking

Why can hiking sometimes be dangerous?

- You might fall or have an accident.
- There might be a big thunderstorm or a dust storm .
- You might get lost.
- It might get dark quickly.

🕕 عاصفة رعدية







Who is in danger?

- People who walk alone
- Older people

Top tips for staying safe!

- 1. Walk with a group of friends or family.
- 2. Take a map 0 and a compass 0.
- 3. Take a phone.
- 4. Wear good hiking boots 6.
- Take lots of water and snacks.
- Wear a hat and put on some sunscreen.

🛈 خريطة

🗿 بوصلة

🚱 أحذية للمشي لمسافات طويلة

Don't forget

- You should plan your trip. How much time do you need?
- You should respect the environment. Don't leave any trash .

Grammar Study 🏌



so that - to

so that

LDAJ

We use so that to express purpose and give a reason and explanation for something.

(so that)

رابط يُستخدم للتعبير عن الغرض وإعطاء سبب وتفسير لشيء ما، ويُتبع بجملة تامة.

Examples:

- Close your curtains during the day so that the sun will not make the rooms hot.
- Eat healthy food so that you can stay healthy.

La to الكتاب

♦ We also use (** + inf.) to say why we do something.

يستخده هذاالرابط أيضًا للتعبير عن الغرض وإعطاء سبب لفعلنا شيء ما، ويُتبع بالمصدر.

Example:

Wear sunglasses to protect your eyes.

Exercises on Lesson (6)



1 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

comfortable - air - windows - curtains - loose

Here are some tips for keeping cool. Close your during the day so that the sun will not make the rooms hot. Wear light-colored, clothes so that you will feel more Drink lots of water so that you can stay well. Open your windows at night so that cooler can come in.

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Eat healthy food (to so that or but) you can stay healthy.
- 2. You can take a flashlight (so that because but to) see when it's dark.
- 3. Wear sunscreen (but so that to because) your skin will not burn.
- Take a map and a compass (to or so that but) you won't get lost!
- 5. You shouldn't eat sweets (but to so that because) have good teeth.
- 6. Wear sunglasses (so that but to because) your eyes can be protected.
- 7. Take a phone (but or so that to) you can get help if you need it.
- You should eat healthy food to (you will stay stay that so that stay) healthy.
- Wear good hiking boots so that (feel your feet will feel to feel feels) comfortable.
- 10. Wear a hat and put on some sunscreen (but because so that to) you won't get burned.

Verm 2

- 11. You should take a phone to (gets you will getting get) help if you need it.
- 12. Walk with a group of friends or family so that (you will be be will be you won't be) alone.
- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
- 1. sun The makes the hot rooms.

.....

- 2. loose Wear clothes feel to comfortable.
- 3. can Why sometimes hiking dangerous be?
- 4. sunglasses Wear your to protect eyes.
- Write an information leaflet about staying safe when you go swimming in your notebook:



Remember these things:

- Write a main heading and two or three sub-headings.
- Use sentences with the imperative and "should", to give advice.
- Include a "Don't forget" tip.
- Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.

Lesson 7 Story



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



king ملك



throne كرسي العرش



officers -/ ضباط - مسؤولون



servants خَدَم



intelligent ذكي - فَطِن



edge حافة



powerful ¦ قوي



fair , عادل - مُنْصِف



obey Xdisobey یطیع x یعصی



look after , پعتني ب



nature ! الطبيعة



bored of يشعر بالملل من

Extra Vocabulary		كلمات إضافية	
world	العالم	surprised	متفاجمً - مندهش
England	إنجلترا	clever	ماهر
Southampton	مدينة ساوثهامبتون بإنجلترا	wet	مُبْتَلّ
lesson	درس	feet	قدمان - أقدام

Activity Book	60		
castle	قلعة	rain (n)	مطر
funny (adj)	مَرِح	agree	يوافق - يَقْبَل
kind (adj)	طیب - عطوف	worried about	قَلِق بشأن

Vocabulary Study SB student's

intelligent: clever and good at learning things

throne: a special chair a king or a queen sits on

normal: usual and not special

obey : do what a person or ruler asks you to do

edge: the part of something that is farthest from the center

Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

A	Present	Past A	PP A
look after	تعيبت ن	looked after	looked after
worry	يقلق	worried	worried
shout	يصرخ - يصيح	shouted	shouted
obey	يُطِيْع	obeyed	obeyed
disobey	تعصت	disobeyed	disobeyed



142

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Pres	ent	Past	PP A
become	يصبح	became	become
say	يقول	said	said
teach	يُدَرِّس	taught	taught
stand up	يقف	stood up	stood up
see	یری	saw	seen
show	يُظهر - يعرض	showed	shown



Read and learn

King Canute

King Canute was the King of England around 1,000 years ago. He was a very fair king on and looked after his people well. His officers @ always told him that he was a great man who was very strong and intelligent 6. Some said, "King Canute, you are the most powerful man on Earth!" But King Canute became bored of what his officers said. He wanted to show them that he was a normal person 6.

- 🕧 ملك عادل
 - 🧐 ضباط
 - 😝 ذکی
- 👩 الرجل الأقوب
- 👩 شخص عادب
 - נושמט 🔞
 - 🕜 عظیم جدًا
 - 🔞 يطيعني
 - 🗿 خَدَم

One day, he was with his officers on the beach in Southampton, a city in the south of England. His officers said to him. "There isn't anything in this world that would disobey 6 you because you are so great 6."

"But what about the sea?" asked King Canute.

"Do you think it will obey me @?"

"Of course!" said the officers. "Everything in this world obeys you, great king!"

King Canute asked his servants of to put his throne on near the edge of the sea, and he sat down. "Don't move, sea!" he shouted. He wanted to teach his officers a lesson.



in England

He waited until the tide came in. First, it wet his feet and then his clothes. His officers were very surprised, but they said nothing.

Finally, King Canute stood up. "You see," he said. "There is no man who can stop the tides. Nothing is more powerful than nature!"

🕡 كرسي العرش 🕦 حافة

Exercises on Lesson 🕜



Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

beach - throne - obey - powerful - looked

King Canute was the King of England around 1,000 years ago. He was a fair king, and he o _______ after his people. His officers always told him that he was a great man and he was the most ______ man on Earth. One day, King Canute asked his servants to put his officers thought that nothing would disobey the king. The king wanted to know if the sea would o ______ him, too.

- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
- 1. of England the King was King Canute.
-
- 2. was King Canute fair king a very.

4. king - the - with - agree - Did - you?

3. are - You - on Earth - powerful man - the most.

- <u>></u>
- •
- <u>></u>?

Write an email of (50) words to Mom and Dad to tell them about the story of King Canute:

From:
To:
Subject:
Dear Mom and Dad,
I want to tell you about King Canute. The king did something unusual.

······································

See you soon,

Unit 7 Test 4

1 Listen and answer the questions:

30 (6Ms)

Total

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (232) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. How many things cause the tides?
- 2. What moves around the Earth and affects the tides?
- 3. What pulls the water on Earth towards it and causes the tides?
- 4. What kind of tide happens when the moon's gravity pulls the water on Earth towards it?
- Read and complete the following text with the words from the list: (4Ms)

muscles - meal - phones - important - sleepy

3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

You must think about the food you eat, how much you exercise and how much you sleep. If you want to be fit, some foods help you to grow and make you strong because they contain proteins. Proteins make our bones and teeth strong. They are found in foods such as meat, fish and beans. You also need foods that contain carbohydrates. Bread, rice and sugar contain carbohydrates. Finally, we need foods that contain vitamins because they protect us from illness.

Choose	the	0000004	
Choose	uie	Correct	answei

- Bread, rice and sugar contain (vitamins proteins fibers carbohydrates).
- 2. The underlined word "fit" means (healthy ill sick weak).

Answer these questions:

- 3. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?
- 4. Why are proteins important for our body?

The Reader

Granddad's Village

4 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(5Ms)

- 1. There was a girl about the same age as Fares. (
- 2. The family moved from Aswan because the father had a new job. ()

Complete the following sentences:

- 1. When Fares wanted, he talked to Granddad to ask for his opinion.
- 2. Granddad used to go to the a lot.

5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

- 1. Does your foot hurt (too enough to many) much to walk on it?
- 2. If he (sleep sleeps will sleep slept) well, he feels well during the day.
- She is (enough intelligent intelligent too intelligent enough enough) to understand what I say.
- 4. She shouldn't (goes going gone go) to bed late.

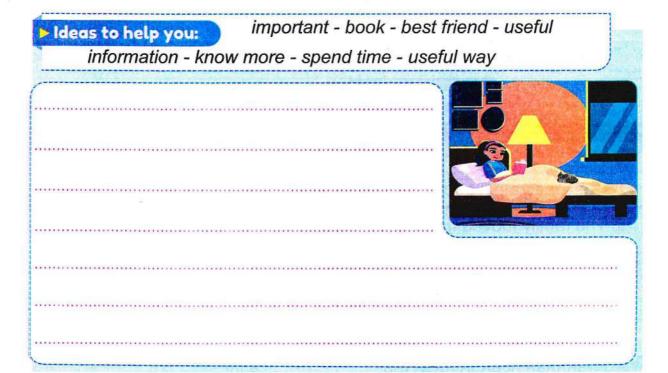
Connect Plus 5 +

147

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:	(1M)
1. Canute - of England - king - was - King - the.	
2. should - keep cool - What - to - you - do?	0

Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:(7Ms)

"Reading"





148

Theme (4) I'm a responsible person

Unit 8

People who help us

التشفاص الذيل يساعدوننا



In this unit I will

- find out about people who help in our community.
- use adjectives ending -ed or -ing.
- use will, won't, and can for offers, promises, and requests.
- understand a conversation and poster about a community event.
- understand a story about an animal rescue.
- understand a school project about nocturnal animals.
- write an introduction to a school project.
- understand a story about animals in the city at night.

Objectives

Vocabulary

Adjectives: annoyed/annoying, excited/exciting, frightened/frightening, tired/tiring Words related to animals: bite, bright, deafening, fishing net, flippers, loud, noise, quiet, strange

Language

- Can you make some food for the party?
- I won't be late.
- It was really annoying!

- I'll make some bread.
- Will you help me?
- It's tiring, but it's great fun!
- She really enjoys it, and the children are really excited to see her.

Reading Conversations between people who need help; a poster for a repair day; a story about rescuing a turtle; a project about nocturnal animals; a story about birds who cannot sleep

introduction to a project

Speaking Discussing people who help in the community; making offers, promises, and requests; preparing for a repair day

Listening A discussion about a cake sale

Life skills - Problem solving: the problems of pollution - Independence: managing sleep

Values - Perseverance - Respect of nature

Sustainable development

Integrated cross-curriculum topics

Science: understanding animals that come out at night

Issues and challenges - Environmental pollution

Writing Researching and writing about a nocturnal animal; a summary of a story; an

Lesson 1 (Helping the community

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





مساعدة المجتمع

helping community neighborhood حی سکنی



neighbors , جيران



make new friends يُكَوِّن أصدقاء جدد



baker خَبَّاز



volunteer مُتَطَوِّع



special needs احتياجات خاصة



team فريق



gloves قفازات - قفاز



special sticks عِمِيّ خاصة



skills مهارات



village قرية



local

مَحَلِّي



pick up garbage لتقط القمامة



heavy rain مطر غزیر



-	

Extra	Vocabulary 💮	ت إضافية	کلما کلما
better place	مكان أفضل	games	ألعاب
different ways	طُرُق مختلفة	great fun	متعة كبيرة
stronger	أقوى	new things	أشياءجديدة
building (n)	البناء	frightening	مخیف - مرعب
nice place	مكان جميل	excited	متحمس
article	مقالة	people	الناس
tiring	مُرهِق - مُتعِب	annoying	إمزعج

Activity Book

Karnak Temple		معبد الكرنك	thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية
the center of the	village	وسط القرية	broken (adj)	مكسورة
campfire	المُخَيَّم)	نار المعسكر (school trip	رحلة مدرسية
engineer		مهندس	football practice	تدريب كرة القدم
washing machine		غسالة	notebook	دفتر - كراسة
used to		اعتاد أن	movie	فيلم
math test	ات	اختبار الرياضيا	vacation	عطلة - إجازة

Expressions & Prepositions

work for two hours

يعمل لمدة ساعتان

play against other teams یلعب ضد فرق أخرى

पिटाना र



look amazing تبدو رائعة good at football

جيد في كرة القدم

on a farm

في مزرعة

make life better

يجعل الحياة أفضل

make them safe

يجعلهم آمنين

once a week

مرة في الأسبوع

twice a week

مرتين في الأسبوع

Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

Present	A	Past A	PP A
clean	يُنَظَف	cleaned	cleaned
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
work	يعمل	worked	worked
enjoy	یستمتع ب	enjoyed	enjoyed
repair	يُصْلِح	repaired	repaired
worry	يَقْلَق	worried	worried
study	يدرس	studied	studied
practice	يتدرب - يتمرن	practiced	practiced
decide	يُقَرِّر	decided	decided

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

	Present	Past	PP
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
meet	يقابل	met	met
teach	يُدَرِّس	taught	taught
come	يأتي	came	come
build	يبني	built	built
think	یفکر - یعتقد	thought	thought
have - has	لديه - يملك	had	had
leave	يرحل	left	left

DID YOU

The police, firefighters, and doctors help people in the community for 24 hours a day, every day of the year!



يساعد رجال الشرطة ورجال الإطفاء والأطباء الناس في المجتمع على مدار 24 ساعة في اليوم، وكل يوم على مدار العام!



Read and learn

How do all the people in the article help their community?

Helping the community

We all live in a community o and we should all help the people who live in it. Have you ever wanted to be a volunteer @? It's a great way to help your community. You can learn new skills 6, make new friends,



people in our neighborhood about different ways people can nake our community stronger.



- 🚺 مجتمع
 - 🙆 متطوع
- و مهارات جدیدة
 - 👩 حي سکني



"I decided to pick up garbage 9 with my cousins.

The park here is beautiful, but there was lots of garbage in it. It was really annoying o! We met one morning with gloves, bags, and special sticks of to pick up the garbage. We worked for two hours, and then the park looked amazing. Now the park is a nice place to play again, and people don't leave their garbage there."



- - 👩 مز عج
 - ഗമ്മ 🕜
 - 🔞 محلیین
 - 🧿 ضد
 - 🛈 متعب
- 🛈 ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة
 - 🔁 مطر غزیر 📵 إصلاح



"My uncle used to be really good at football when he was younger. He doesn't play any more, but he teaches the local 9 children. I love playing on his team! We practice once or twice a week, and we play games against o other teams. It's tiring o, but it's great fun!"



"My grandma used to be a teacher, and now she comes into our school sometimes to help children with special needs 1. She really enjoys it, and the children are really excited to see her!"



"My dad is a baker, but he is really good at building. Last year, there was heavy rain @ in our village. It was frightening and lots of people were worried about their homes. My dad helped to repair 1 lots of homes and buildings, to make them safe again. He made life better for our neighbors. Some days I helped him, too!"

If you want to help your community, think about what skills you have. How can you help other people? You might be surprised at the new things you can do!

154

The Lesson Notes

- خائف (adj) خائف
- ❖ If an adjective ends in (-ed), it describes how a person feels.
 - الصفة المنتهية بـ (ed-) تصف كيف يشعر الشخص (في الغالب تُستخدم لوصف عاقل).

Example:

- ▶ He was frightened on watching the movie.
- مخيف (adj) مخيف
- If an adjective ends in (-ing), it describes the thing that makes the person feel like that.

الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف الشيء الذي جعل الشخص يشعر بهذا (في الغالب تُستخدم لوصف غير العاقل).

Example:

The movie was frightening.

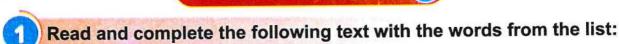
نفس الأمر ينطبق على الصفات الآتية:

And the second second	AND DESIGNATION OF	A STATE OF THE STATE OF	
"-ed"		COLUMN TO	
	UUIE		

"-ina" adjectives

	uajectives 1	4 -111	g aajectives
annoyed	منزعج	annoying	مزعِج
frightened	خائف	frightening	مخيف
tired	مُتعَب	tiring	مُتعِب
worried	قلِق الله المالة	worrying	مُقلِق
excited	سعید - متحمس	exciting	مثير
surprised	متفاجئ - مندهش	surprising	مُفاجِمً - مُدهش
interested	مهتم	interesting	ممتع - شيق
amazed	مندهش	amazing	مُدهِش

Exercises on Lesson 🚺



skills - neighborhood - friends - community - volunteer

Helping people is a very good thing. We all live in a
and we should all help the people who live in it. Have you ever wanted to be a
? It's a great way to help your community. You can learn new
make new friends, and make your a better place.

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

frightening - excited - needs - worried - repair

My name is Habiba. My grandma used to be a teacher, and now she comes into our school sometimes to help children with special . She really enjoys it, and the children are really to see her! My dad is a baker, but he is really good at building. Last year, there was heavy rain in our village. It was and lots of people were about their homes. My dad helped to repair lots of homes and buildings, to make them safe again.

Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

special sticks - garbage - annoying - hours - beautiful

Omnia: Did you help your community, Habiba?

Habiba : Yes. My cousins and I decided to pick up 0

Omnia: Where did you start?

Habiba : The park here is @, but there was lots of garbage

in it. It was really annoying!

Omnia: When did you meet to pick up the garbage at the park?

156

Step Ahead

- What can you do with your friends?

















-Lesson 2 Language



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



library مکتبة





paint (۷) یدهن



rainwater ماء المطر ,



boil (۷) يغلي - يسلق



basketball practice تمرین کرة السلة



picnic blanket مفرش نُزَهة خلوية



damage (۷) يُتلِف

, EXI	ra Vocabulary	إصامية	رحــــــر
fridge	ثلاجة	hungry	جائع
bread	خبز	free (adj)	مُتَّفَرِّغ (عنده وقت)
eggs	بيض	late	متأخر
tomatoes	طماطم	party	حفل
cucumbers	خيار	thirsty	عطشان

Activitu Book

The state of the s			
club	بادث	journey	رحلة
kitchen	مطبخ	cookies	بسکویت - کوکیز
camping trip	رحلة تخييم	board game	لعبة لوحية
picnic bag	حقيبة تَنَزُّه	flashlight	مصباح يدوي (کشاف)

Expressions & Prepositions

Of course!

بالطبع!

That's a great idea!

هذه فكرة عظيمة!

cut up

يُقَطِّع بالسكين

What can I do?

ماذا بإمكاني أن أفعل؟

Can you help me?

هل يمكنك مساعدتي؟

make a request

يقدم طلب

make an offer

يقدم عرض

make a promise

يقطع وعدًا

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

	Present	Past	Table PP
damage	يُتْلِف - يُدَمِّر	damaged	damaged
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
share	يشارك	shared	shared
boil	يغلي	boiled	boiled
paint	يُلَوِّن - يدهن	painted	painted
borrow	يستعير	borrowed	borrowed

159

Unit 8

A	Present	Past	PP A
cut up	يُقَطِّع	cut up	cut up
put	يضع	put	put
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
get	يحصل علم	got	got (gotten)
lend	يُسَلِّف - يُعير	lent	lent
forget	ينسي	forgot	forgotten



Read and learn

When is Magdy's dad going to the library?

The library's new painting

Dad : Hello Magdy, can you help me?

Magdy: Yes, of course! What can I do?

Dad: I'm painting the library today. The rainwater damaged it. We need

to move lots of books before we start!

Magdy: I'll help you with that! I can come at

ten o'clock after basketball practice.

Dad : Great! I'm going there now to start.

Magdy: OK Dad, I won't be late.

Dad : Do you think your friends are free? Will you ask them to help?

Magdy: Yes, I will. That's a great idea! Ziad can help us move the books

and Zein and Fady can help you paint.

Mom : OK, children, we're meeting your cousins at the beach today. Can you help me make a picnic?

: Yes, of course, I'll boil some eggs. Everybody

likes those!





Lara

Amir: I'll cut up some tomatoes and cucumbers.

Mom: Great. I'll make some bread.

Lara : I love your bread, Mom! I won't eat it all though. I'll share it!

Mom : Yes, Lara! Will you get some bottles of water from the fridge, too?

Lara: Yes, I'll put them in the bag.

Amir: I'll get the picnic blanket, too. This is going to be fun.

Grammar Study 🎎



will - won't - can

🔲 يمكن استخدام هذه الأفعال للتعبير عن:

مصدر الفعل :Subject + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + inf مصدر الفعل :Promise عدع

Examples:

- ▶ I'll send you your birthday gift tomorrow.
- I won't be late.

مصدر الفعل .Can/Will + subject + inf : طلب

Examples:

- Can you help me?
- ▶ Will you ask them to help?

مصدر الفعل .Subject + can/will + inf عرض

Examples:

- I can carry these bags with you.
- I will help you with your homework.

Remember:

- The contracted form of will is 'll.
- In negative sentences, we use will + not = won't.
- After will, won't and can, we use the infinitive without to.

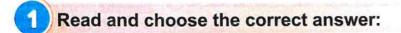
🔷 تذكر أن:

◄ اختصار كلمة (will) هو (۱۱')، والنفي هو (won't).

◄ الكلمات (will - won't - can) لا بد أن يُتبعوا فعل في المصدر.

Exercises on Lesson (







Mom: OK, children, we're meeting your cousins at the beach today.(Can you help - Can you to help) me make a picnic?

Lara: Yes, of course. (I boil - I'll boil) some eggs. Everybody likes those!

Amir: (I'll cut up - I cut up) some tomatoes and cucumbers.

Mom: Great. (Will I make - I'll make) some bread.

Lara: I love your bread, Mom! (I don't eat - I won't eat) it all though.

(I share - I'll share) it!

Mom: Yes, Lara! (Will you get - Will you getting) some bottles of water from the fridge, too?

Lara: Yes, 6 (I'll put - I to put) them in the bag.

Amir: @ (I'll get - I to get) the picnic blanket, too. This is going to be fun!

2 Complete the conversation with the words from the box:



do - get - I'll - put - Will - Will - won't

Mom: I think we have everything we need for our camping trip.

you help me put everything in the car?

Dad : Yes, of course. I'll @ the tent and the bags in the car now.

Reem: e get the picnic bag.

Mom : Thank you, Reem. And don't forget some snacks for the journey.

162 Step Ahead

- Reem: Oh, good. I'll o some cookies and some fruit.
- Mom : Don't get the chocolate cookies, Reem. They're for Grandma.
- Reem: OK, I get them.
- : 6 you put the flashlight in the camping bag, Reem?
- Reem: Yes, I'll that now.
- Dad : Great! I think that's everything. Let's go!
- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
- 1. your I please borrow Can bike,?
 - >?
- 2. I help you will tomorrow, Dad. **>**
- 3. you ask if we can go Will your mom to the club?

b

- 4. help clean you I'll the kitchen.
- rainwater The library the damaged yesterday.
-
- 6. for you food make Can the party? ?
- 7. my project help me you with Will?
- 8. me, you please help Can Lara?
- 9. get Will bottles some you of water?
-?
- 10. picnic the I get will blanket.

Unit 8

--Lesson 3 A concert



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



saving money توفير (ادخار) المال



raising money جمع المال



electronic devices أجهزة إلكترونية



sports equipment / مُعِدَّات رياضية



repair (n - v) إصلاح - يصلح



<mark>cake sale</mark> ركن بيع الكيك



broken مکسور - عطلان



furniture ຕໍ່ມີກໍ່



concert حفل موسیقی ِ



gardens ددائق /



Town Hall مبنی البلدیة



community center / مرکز اجتماعی

Extra Vocabulary good ways قيدة - أساليب جيدة planet بولاي good idea فكرة جيدة volunteer وعطور ready عامة - مستعد different skills معارات مختلفة clothes ملابس tickets

Activity Book			
playground	فِناء - ملعب	absorb	تمتص
local stores	متاجر محلية	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون
poster	مُلصَق	habitat	موطن - موئل
Aswan Road	طريق أسوان	environment	بيئة
photography	تصوير فوتوغرافي	insects	حشرات
community garden	רבנסה מכומצנה	mulat pina lyavas	final

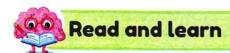
Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

Pre	sent	A Past	PP
save money	يوفر (يدّخر) المال	saved money	saved money
raise money	يجمع المال	raised money	raised money
try	يحاول	tried	tried
repair	يصلح	repaired	repaired
offer	يعرض	offered	offered
absorb	تمتص	absorbed	absorbed
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	relaxed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Pre	esent	Past	PP 📜
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
bring	يُحضِر	brought	brought
throw away	يرمي - يتخلص من	threw away	thrown away



When is the Repair Day?

Repair Day!

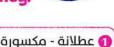


Help the planet and save money.

We can repair clothes, furniture, electronic devices 6, and lots more! Come to the Town Hall 6 on Saturday, May 7th from 10 am to 5 pm.

Tickets are LE10. We are

raising money of for new sports equipment of at the community center of the co



- 🧿 يوم الإصلاح
 - 쥥 متطوعون
 - 🕜 مجتمع
- 쥥 أجهزة إلكترونية
 - 👩 مبنہ البلدية
 - 🧑 نجمع المال
- 3 معدات ریاضیة9 مرکز اجتماعی

Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

equipment - devices - planet - raising - sports

Have you read that? There's an advertisement that wants us to hel
the 0 and save money. It says, "We can repair clothes
furniture, electronic 2, and lots more! Come to the Tow
Hall on Saturday, May 7th from 10 am to 5 pm. Tickets are LE10. We are
money for new sports at the community money for new sports money for new sports
center. You can also buy food and drink."

Every day, we throw away many kilos of trash. In many countries, trash has been recycled for a long time. They sort out trash into piles of plastic, tins, glass, cardboard, paper, and so on. Sometimes they turn them into other useful things. The broken bottles are collected. They are then used to make new bottles. Paper is also used again. When we use recycled paper, we help to save trees. Recycling trash is better than throwing it away, as it keeps the environment clean and saves materials and money.

ALC: NO.	NAME OF TAXABLE PARTY.	AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PARTY OF
AND THE REAL PROPERTY.		
	Choose tr	e correct answer:
	AND A STATE OF THE RESIDENCE	

- 1. Using recycled (bottles paper tin plastic) helps to save trees.
- The underlined word "it" refers to the (money trash environment tree).
- Answer these questions:
 - 3. Why is recycling important?
 - 4. What materials are sorted out during recycling?
- 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

......

- 1. the planet save You can money and help.
- 2. do hear you a concert What at?

......

3. the - have - We - from - community - volunteers.



Unit 8 4. are - help - ready - to - you - We.
5. devices - repair - can - electronic - We - and clothes.
6. and water - you - some - get - juice - Will?
Write an email of (50) words to your friend Hazem:
Invite him to share in the Repair Day that you and your friends are going to join to help save the planet and save money as well. Tell him about the project and how it's useful, and tell him what you are going to do there. Your email address is harv@yahoo.com , and your friend's email address is hazem@gamil.com .
From:
To:
Subject:

Lesson 4 Animal rescue



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



animal rescue إنقاذ الحيوانات



wild animals حيوانات برية



turtle سلحفاة مائية



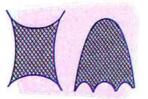
shell صدفة



flippers زعانف



shallow water مياه ضحلة



fishing net شبكة صيد سمك



get stuck يَعْلَق



charity مؤسسة خيرية



bite (v)



مقص

scissors



strange

Extra	Vocabulary	ت إضافية	کلمان
phone number	رقم التليفون	problem	مشكلة
disappear	يختفي	frightened	خائف - مرتعب
object	ديش	hard	صلب - جامد
suddenly	فجأة	carefully	بحذر - بحرص

Activity Book			
marine animal	حيوان بحري	lights	أضواء
rescue center	مركز إنقاذ	visitors	زُوَّار - زائرين
vacation	عُطلة	accidents	حوادث
clear blue water	میاه زرقاء صافیة	injured	مصاب
boats	قوارب	habitat	موطن - موئل
water sports	رياضات مائية	lay eggs	تضع بيضها - تبيض
building	مبنم	website	موقع إلكتروني
contact (v)	يتواصل	area	منطقة

Expressions & Prepositions

look like یبدو - یشبه	on the beach helmil വ്യമ	يلوح إلى wave to
at the end	in the future	in danger
في النهاية	في المستقبل	في خطر
on vacation	have accidents	bad for
في عطلة **	يتعرضون لحوادث	ا ء دس

at night	on our website	look after
في الليل	علي موقعنا الإلكتروني	یعتنی ب



Thank you for coming.

Lesson 4

شكرًا لقدومك.

close to

بالقرب من

Be careful.

كن حذرًا.

Vocabulary Study S B Student's Book

strange: unusual or surprising

flippers: some sea animals have these to help them move

bite : cut something with your teeth

disappear: when something goes away and you can't see it

fishing net: what fishing boats use to catch lots of fish

Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

P	esent	Past 📗	PP PP
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
wave	يُلَوِّح	waved	waved
phone	يتصل تليفونيًا	phoned	phoned
rescue	يُنقذ وراوع	rescued	rescued
يُسَمِّى call	يتصل تليفونيًا - ينادي -	called	called
look for	يبحث عن المحدد	looked for	looked for
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
contact	يتواصل	contacted	contacted
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
disappear يختفي		disappeared	disappeared
يَخْطُو للخلف - يرجع خطوة للخلف step back		stepped back	stepped back

Unit 8

A P	resent	Past 💄	PP A
lay eggs	تبيض - تضع بيضها	laid eggs	laid eggs
find	یجد	found	found
come	يأتي	came	come
drive	یقود (مَرْکَبَة)	drove	driven
stand	يقف	stood	stood
hold	يُمْسِك	held	held
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
feel	یشعر - یحس	felt	felt
swim	یسبح - یعوم	swam	swum

600

Read and learn

Who helps the turtle?

The turtle

Reem and Talia were playing on the beach with their parents.

Suddenly 0, Reem saw something strange in the sea.

"Look, Talia. Is that a ball?"

The two girls walked slowly to the strange object ②. It looked like a fishing net ③,but they could also see a small head, and something hard. It was a shell ③!

"It's a turtle!" said Talia.

"It's stuck of in the net," said Reem.

"It's frightened 6!"

They waved to Mom and Dad on the beach.

"We've found a turtle. It has a problem!" said Reem.

Mom and Dad quickly came into the

sea. "What can we do?" asked Talia. The net was around the turtle's neck o and

flippers 3.

"Can we touch it?"
"Sea turtles don't
bite o," said
Mom. "But you need
to be careful o with
wild animals o."

🕡 فجأة 👩 شيء غريب

6) شبكة صيد

🗿 صَدَفة

😉 عالقة

👩 خائفة

🧑 رقبة ن عانف (3

👩 لا تعض

🕧 حذرًا

🕦 الحيوانات البرية



"We should phone someone to turtle, she carefully cut off the net ... help," said Dad. "I saw a poster with the name of a charity @ which rescues turtles," said Talia.

"I'll phone it," said Mom.

There was a small café on the beach with a poster and a phone number for the charity. Mom called it.

"Hello. My daughters have found a turtle in the sea. It has a net around its neck, and it can't swim well."

"We'll come to the beach now," said the woman.

Soon, a car drove into the car park, and a man and a woman got out.

"I'm Mariam and this is Adel," the woman said.

"Thank you for coming," said Talia. Dad and Reem were standing close to B the turtle in shallow water D. Mariam got a small pair of scissors ® from the bag. With Adel holding the



Everybody stepped back of and the turtle slowly began to swim. It could move easily now. They watched it swim away. Before it disappeared. Dad took a photo.

"Thank you! You saved the turtle's

life!" Mariam said to the family.

"Thank you for calling We us. always want to help," said Adel.

🔞 مؤسسة خيرية 📵 بالقرب من

> 🔞 میاه ضحلة 📵 مقص صغیر

🔞 قطعت شیکة الصيد بحذر

😈 أخذ خطوة للخلف

What two things can volunteers do at the Marine Animal Rescue Centre?

Activity Book Text



Marine Animal Rescue Center

We are looking for volunteers •! We need people to help us at the Marine Animal Rescue Center 0.

Every year, we have more visitors who come on vacation to enjoy the beaches and the beautiful clear blue water.





🕡 متطوعین 🧟 مركز إنقاذ الحيوانات البحرية



Unit 8

But when we have more visitors, we have more problems for our marine animals. There are more boats, more water sports, more garbage, and more lights at night from buildings and hotels. All of this is bad for turtles and other marine animals.

Many turtles have accidents with boats, or they get stuck in fishing nets. We need volunteers to help us look after injured turtles (a) at the rescue center.

As more hotels are built, turtles lose their beach habitats 4. We need to protect the beaches where turtles come to lay their eggs 5. We need volunteers to work at night on the beaches to protect turtles when they are laying their eggs.

If you feel excited about helping us protect turtles, please contact us on our website.

🐠 مواطن - موائل

😏 تضع بيضها

Exercises on Lesson (4)



1 Complete the summary of the story with the words from the box:



bite – disappeared – fishing net – flippers – strange

While Reem and Talia were playing on the beach, they saw something in the sea. They couldn't see what it was. It was a turtle, and a was around its neck. It couldn't move its head or its and it was in danger. So, Reem's mom quickly phoned an animal rescue charity. Soon, a man and a woman arrived to help the turtle. They were called Adel and Mariam. Adel held the turtle while Mariam cut the fishing net with some scissors. Turtles aren't dangerous animals and they don't man and their parents watched as the turtle swam away. Before it man and they don't man and their parents watched as the beautiful animal.

2

Read the following text and answer the questions:



Marine Animal Rescue Center

We are looking for volunteers! We need people to help us at the Marine Animal Rescue Center.

Every year, we have more visitors who come on vacation to enjoy the beaches and the beautiful, clear blue water. But when we have more visitors, we have more problems for our marine animals. There are more boats, more water sports, more garbage, and more lights at night from buildings and hotels. All of this is bad for turtles and other marine animals. Many turtles have accidents with boats or they get stuck in fishing nets. We need volunteers to help us look after injured turtles at the rescue center.

As more hotels are built, turtles lose their beach habitats. We need to protect the beaches where turtles come to lay their eggs. We need volunteers to work at night on the beaches to protect turtles when they are laying their eggs.

If you feel excited about helping us protect turtles, please contact us on our website.

Choose the correct answer:

- Many turtles have accidents with (boats visitors volunteers swimming).
- 2. Turtles lay eggs (in the morning at noon at night in the afternoon).
- Answer these questions:
 - 3. What is the Marine Animal Rescue Center looking for?
 - 4. What do volunteers need to do to help protect turtles?



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

<u>></u>

<u>></u>

- 1. were the playing on beach They.
- 2. saw She a strange in the sea thing.
- 3. found turtle a We've the beach on.
- 4. be careful need to You animals wild with.

.....

.....

- 5. the beach was café There a small on.
- 6. turtle The was water shallow in.
- Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Birds"

ldeas to help you: birds — nice — happy — fly — sing — live — trees — build nests — look for — food — feed — young — mouth



Lesson 5 Life at night

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





nocturnal animals رحيوانات ليلية



diurnal animals حیوانات نهاریة



predator حیوان مفترس



prey فریسة



fennec fox ثعلب الفنك ,ثعلب



camel رجمل



donkey حمار



<mark>owl</mark> بُومَة



light pollution رتلوُّث ضوئیں



artificial lights أضواء اصطناعية



in the day نهارًا - بالنهار



at night ليلاً - بالليل - بالليل



hot countries دُول ذات مناخ حار



project مشروع



darkness ظلام



awake مستیقظ /



adapt ريتكيَّف - يتأقلم ____



enses حواس



hunt ریصطاد حیوانات



useful مفید - نافعة



Unit 8

Extra V	ocabulary إضافية	
stores	offices מבערי - מוורָת	مكاتب
instructions	traffic تعلیمات	مرور - حركه المرور

Activity Book

178

North Africa	شمال أفريقيا	sense of sm	ell حاسة الشم
desert plants	نباتات صحراوية	leaves	أوراق أشجار
sand	رمل	light bulb	لمبة - إضاءة - مصباح كهربائي
Dorcas gazelles	غزال الدوركاس	metal	معدن

Expressions & Prepositions



Step Ahead

5

Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

Pr	esent	Past	PP D
compare	يُقَارِن	compared	compared
cause	يُسَبِّب لِيُسَيِّد	caused	caused
develop	يتطور - يُطَوِّر	developed	developed
adapt	يتأقلم موروا	adapted	adapted
prefer	يُفَضِّل	preferred	preferred

Pres	sent	Past	PP
give	يعطي	gave	given
hide	يختبىئ	hid	hidden
tell	يُخبر	told	told
sleep	ينام	slept	slept

Read and learn

Nocturnal animals

by Youssef Sabry



You do not often see a fennec fox, • because they are nocturnal •. That means they only come out • at night. In my project, I'm going to tell you about nocturnal animals.

🕦 ثعلب الفنك 🗿 حيوان ليلي 🔞 تخرج



onnect Plus 5

What are nocturnal and diurnal animals?

Nocturnal animals sleep in the day but are awake at night. They hunt for their prey or look for food when it is dark. Other animals like camels and donkeys are diurnal o, which means they are awake in the day. We see these more often than nocturnal ones!



Why are some animals nocturnal?

In hot countries, it is difficult for some animals to find food when it is very hot. It is better to sleep in the day and come out at night when it is cooler.

It can also be easier for small animals to hide from predators @ at night. It is safer to come out when it is dark because they can't easily see them.



The senses of nocturnal animals have developed differently to diurnal animals. They have adapted to work when it is dark. For example, owls have large eyes that help them to see in the dark.

Nocturnal animals also have a very good sense of hearing .
It is important to be able to hear well if it is difficult to see.

Fennec fox

- 👩 فریسة
- و حیوانات نهاریة
- 👩 حیوانات مفترسة
- 🥜 حاسة سمع جيدة
 - للغاية
 - 👩 تلؤث ضوئي
- أضواء اصطناعيةأضواء الختام
- 🕥 يُسَبِّبون مشاكل

What problems do nocturnal animals have?

There is often light pollution in cities. Light pollution is when there are artificial lights of at night, for example, from houses, stores, offices, and traffic. This is a problem for nocturnal animals. There are fewer hours of darkness, and fewer places where animals can hide or look for food. Predators such as foxes can see better in places with light pollution, which makes it more difficult for prey to hide.

In conclusion , it is useful for some animals to be nocturnal because they can hide and find more food. It is also easier to sleep in the day in very hot countries. People are causing problems for nocturnal animals because there are more lights in cities and less darkness.

Activity Book Text



Dorcas gazelles

Dorcas gazelles live in and near the hot, dry deserts 0 of North Africa. They are small animals and they are the same color as sand o. They sleep for most of the day when it is hot. At night, it is cooler, so they look for leaves 6, fruits, and flowers from desert plants 6. Dorcas gazelles do not need to drink water because they get all the water they need from their food.



🕻 الصحارب الجافة 💈 رمل 🔞 أوراق الشجر 🐠 نباتات صحراوية

Exercises on Lesson (5



Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

dark – day – predators – noct

The world of animals is strange. Why are some animals 0? In hot countries, it is difficult for some animals to find food when it is very hot. It is better to sleep in the @ and come out at 6 when it is cooler. It can also be easier for small animals to hide from @ at night. It is safer to come out when it is dark because they can't easily see them.

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

(lights – prey – artificial – darkness – pollution)

Do you live in a city? There is often light in cities. Light pollution is when there are @ lights at night, for example, from houses, stores, offices, and traffic. This is a problem for nocturnal animals. There are fewer hours of 6 and fewer places where animals can hide or look for food. Predators such as foxes can see better in places with light pollution, which makes it more difficult for @ to hide.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions:



Dorcas gazelles live in and near the hot, <u>dry</u> deserts of North Africa. They are small animals and they are the same color as sand. They sleep for most of the day when it is hot. At night, it is cooler, so they look for leaves, fruits, and flowers from desert plants. Dorcas gazelles do not need to drink water because they get all the water they need from their food.

Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "dry" is (cool - wet - hard - hot).

<u>></u>?

<u>></u>

2. Dorcas gazelles are (small - big - giant - huge) animals.

Answer these questions:

- 3. Summarize the text in one sentence.
- Why don't Dorcas gazelles drink water?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1. animals do problems What have nocturnal?
- 2. fox is animal a nocturnal The fennec.
- 3. diurnal and camels are Donkeys animals.
- 4. sense of have Nocturnal animals good hearing a very.
- 5. in is There light pollution cities often.

-Lesson 6 Writing an introduction

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





/ البشر - بنو آدم



urban environment سئة حَضَرتُة



rural areas /مناطق ريفية



absorb heat , تمتص الحرارة



artificial اصطناعي

Activity Book



plastic pollution / تَلَوُّث بلاستيكى



traffic / حركة المرور - مرور



concrete خرسانة

Extra	Vocabulary	مات إضافية	Lawrence,
light pollution	garl تلۇث ضوئىي	bage	قمامة
problem	stre مشكلة	et lights	أضواء الشارع
surprising	0€00 مفاجمهٔ - مُدهش	on	محيط
the natural world	العالم الطبيعي <mark>in th</mark>	ne past	في الماضي

topic	موضوع	busy cit
find out	يكتشف	environ
air	هواء	create
AND REAL PROPERTY OF THE PROPE		

charities ثاني أكسيد الكربون carbon dioxide oxygen noise pollution

ties مدن مزدحمة ments سئات يُوْجِد - يخلق جمعیات (مؤسسات) خیریة

affect أكسچين تُؤَثِّر على

سِائِ أَلُونُ مُوضَائِي health محق

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Pro	esent 🗼	A Past A	PP A
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed
disappear	يختفي	disappeared	disappeared
stop	يوقف	stopped	stopped
absorb	يمتص	absorbed	absorbed
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
create	يوجِد - يخلق	created	created
cause	ؽؙؚڛٙڹؚٞڹ	caused	caused
research	يبحث - يكتب بحث	researched	researched
answer	يُجيب	answered	answered
	Irregular verbs	ال غير منتظمة	စင်္က

Pres	ent 🗎	A Past	A PP A
know	يعرف	knew	known
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	thought
keep	يُبقي	kept	kept
understand	يفهم	understood	understood



What do you notice about these introductions?

Read these introductions to projects.

Light pollution

Did you know that humans o make more artificial light one now than at any time in the past? Cities are getting bigger of and stores, houses, and traffic all make light. We wanted በ البشر to find out @ what happens to 🧿 ضوء اصطناعي the natural world when there 🔞 تزداد حجمًا is a lot of artificial light. 🛭 نكتشف

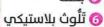




Plastic pollution

Did you know that it can take 400 years for plastic to disappear in the sea? This causes big problems for animals in the sea. I have researched 6 what causes plastic pollution 6 and why we need to stop it. 🕝 تَحَثْثُ





Urban environments

Did you know that urban areas are often hotter than rural areas ? This might not be surprising because concrete @ and buildings can absorb heat o. This makes the air around them hotter. This is my project about

the urban environment and why it can be a difficult place to live.



🕜 مناطق ريفية 🔞 خرسانة

🧿 تمتص الحرارة

كتابة مقدمة عن موضوع (مدخل لموضوع) Writing an introduction

When you write an introduction to a project, you have to make the topic very clear. You can do this by starting with the questions that you are going to answer in the project. You can also explain what you are going to do.

عندما تكتب مقدمة لموضوع، لابد أن تُوَضِّح الموضوع الذي ستتناوله. يمكنك أن تبدأ بأسئلة سوف تجيب عنها في موضوعك، ويمكنك أيضًا أن تشرح ما ستقوم به.

You might see these features in a project:

قد ترب هذه الخصائص في مشروع:

- Sub-titles
- Facts and figures
- 3. Answers to guestions

حقائق وأرقام

عناوين فرعية

إجابات على الأسئلة

Exercises on Lesson (6)



Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:



air - carbon dioxide - cleaner - environments - green know - plants - urban

Did you 0	that 2	and trees can help clean the
		? Plants absorb
6	and they make oxygen. I h	nave researched how we can
create more 6	spaces in our	cities, and how this will create
0	air in 6 environn	nents.

Complete the information about writing an introduction with these words:



answer - explain - introduction - questions - topic

When you write an 0 to a project, you have to make the every clear. You can do this by starting with the that you are going to 6 in the project. You can also • what you are going to do.



186

Step Ahead

3 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

absorb - concrete - rural - environment - urban

Do you live in a city or a village? Did you know that urban areas are often hotter than • areas? This might not be surprising because and buildings can • heat. This makes the air around them hotter. This project is about the urban • and why it can be a difficult place to live.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

>

- 1. big causes in problems the sea Plastic pollution.
- 2. heat Concrete buildings and absorb can.
- 3. pollution stop need to We plastic.
- **>** ------.
- 4. the cities lots of are lights in There.

.....

.....

- 5. researched have I causes what plastic pollution.
- 6. areas Urban are than often hotter rural areas.



--Lesson 7 Story

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس









blackbird /الطائر الأسود - طائر الشحرور



dove حمامة



bulbul بلبل



deafening يَصُمّ الآذان



loud ٍ صوتٌ عالٍ



quiet هادئ



turn off يُطْفِئ

Extra Vocabulary		ضافية	,۔۔۔۔۔۔, کلمات إ
asleep (adj) x awake (adj) نائم ×مستیقظ		l don't know w	hat to do. لا أعرف ما يجب عليّ فعله.
turn off the lights	يطفىء الأنوار	ten-year-old	يبلغ من العمر عشر سنوات
dark	داکن - مظلم	pleased	سعید - مسرور
bright	مشرق - لامع	loudly	بصوتٍ عالٍ
annoying	مزعج	early	مبكرًا
environment	بيئة	street	شارع
I feel excited.	أشعر بالحماسة.	noise	ضوضاء
Good idea!	فكرة جيدة!	plan	خطة

Activity Book

the countryside	الريف	fields	حقول
gardens	حدائق	seeds	بذور
insects	حشرات	sounds	أصوات

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Pres	ent	Past	PP
join	ينضم	joined	joined
agree	يوافق	agreed	agreed
start	يبدأ	started	started

	Present	Past	PP
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
sing	يُغَنِّى	sang	sung
fly	يطير	flew	flown
shine	يلمع - يسطع	shone - shined	shone - shined
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
hear	يسمع	heard	heard

Read and learn

Why does Speely wake up?

Story: The early bird



Speely Sparrow was asleep. It was dark and quiet •. Then a noise woke him up. Boomy Blackbird was singing loudly.

The singing was annoying. Speely said, "Please be quiet. It's night! I was sleeping!"

Boomy flew over to Speely's tree. "I'm sorry," he said. "The lights in people's houses wake me up. I feel excited, so I sing!"

"Ah yes," said Speely, "the lights are strong, and they're much brighter of than the old ones."

"I don't know what to do," Boomy said sadly. Speely said, "I know! We can tell people that their lights are too bright. We can sing together." "Good idea!" said Boomy.

So the two birds sang outside all the windows in the street. But nobody heard. Everybody was sleeping.

Boomy said, "Can we get help?" Speely said, "Yes, I'll ask a friend.



Dovy Dove is always up early!"

So Dovy sang with them, but only Mrs Samia heard because her baby was already awake.

The next night, Billy Bulbul joined them. The birds sang for hours. But everybody was still sleeping and nobody heard.

So the next night, Speely and Boomy brought all their friends. All the birds sang very loudly.

The noise was deafening of!

Everybody woke up and looked out of their windows.

Ten-year-old Amira said to her mom, "The birds are very loud! Why are they singing now? It's night!"

"It was dark at night when I was a little girl," said her mom. "Look how bright the lights are shining now."

"Mom, maybe the lights wake up the birds, so they are not sleeping at night," said Amira. "They think it's morning because the lights are waking them up. Let's ask people to turn off their lights at night when there is nobody around."

"What a good idea, Amira," said her mom. "That will help the environment of and help the birds, too."

Everybody agreed, and soon it was dark again at night. The birds could sleep. They were not tired of any more.



() هادئ (2 ألمع بريقًا (3 تصم الآذان (4 البيئة (5 غير مُتعَب

Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

environment - birds - turn off - lights - morning

- 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
- 1. lights The and bright strong are.
- 2. loudly the All sang birds yesterday.
- 3. any more birds not were tired The.







Listen and answer the questions:

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (232) آخر الكتاب.

- When do nocturnal animals sleep?
- When do nocturnal animals look for food?
- 3. How are camels during the day?
- What kind of animals are donkeys: diurnal or nocturnal?
- Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list: (4Ms)

.......

free - damaged - late - practice - painting

Dad : Hello Magdy, can you help me?

Magdy: Yes, of course! What can I do?

Dad : I'm painting the library today. The rainwater • it.

We need to move lots of books before we start!

Magdy: I'll help you with that! I can come at ten o'clock after basketball

Dad : Great! I'm going there now to start.

Magdy: OK, Dad, I won't be 6

: Do you think your friends are? Will you ask them to help?

Magdy: Yes, I will. That's a great idea! Ziad can help us move the books,

and Zein and Fady can help you paint.

Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

There are many deserts in the world, and they are all dry. The weather there is usually very hot. In some deserts, there are a lot of rocks, and in others, there is a lot of sand. In the sand deserts, wind forms sand hills. The plants and animals that live in the desert do not need much water.

Desert animals can live for a long time without drinking. They sometimes get water from plants. The leaves of desert plants are often very small. This helps the plants keep water inside them.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Desert animals sometimes get water from (sand rocks plants mountains).
- 2. In the sand desert, wind forms sand (hills mountains oasis rocks).
- **Answer these questions:**
 - 3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

4. What is the weather like in deserts?

The Reader Granddad's Village

A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(5Ms)

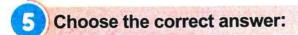
1. Granddad used to go to the theater a lot.

Fares traveled with Waleed's family by car.

Complete the following sentences:

- 3. Today, everyone watches or uses the internet.
- 4. Fares was very interested to see Granddad's

Unit 8



(2Ms)

(1M)

- 1. (Can Have Were Are) you help me?
- 2. The school trip to the Karnak Temple was (interested tired exciting excited).
- 3. She won't (came coming comes come) with us to the party.
- 4. Amir was (annoying annoyed annoy annoys) because he was late for football practice.
- 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
 - 1. big animals causes Plastic for problems.
 - ······
 - 2. community How your do help you?
- Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

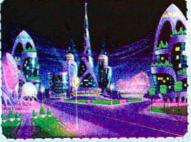
"Pollution"

ldeas to help you: light pollution - plastic pollution - air pollution - water pollution











Test 6 on Units 7 8

Listen and answer the questions:





نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (232) آخر الكتاب.

1. What is garbage bad for?
2. What happens when people put garbage into a canal or river?
3. What should a volunteer do?
4. What can we use to collect garbage from canals and rivers?
Read and complete the following dialouge with the words from the list: (4M
poster - Can - online - photos - print
Sara: Hi, Laila, I'm making a poster to ask people to volunteer to clean the beach. you help me?
Laila: Yes, of course. What can I do?
Sara: Will you look for some ② ? I think more people will notice the poster if it has photos.
Laila: Yes, that's a good idea. I will look 6 now. I think I'll be able to find pictures of beaches with garbage on. I won't use anything that doesn't look nice, though.
Sara: Thank you. I'll put them in my some. Then I'll put them up at school.
Laila: That's fantastic!

Read the following text and answer the questions:

Some animals are diurnal, which means they are wide awake during the day. When the sun sets, they go to sleep. Lots of desert animals are nocturnal. They sleep in the day when it is too hot to look for food. Some of these animals can see and hear well at night, so they can hunt for food in the darkness. Their senses have adapted to work better at night. If there isn't enough light to see, they use hearing and smell to find food.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Lots of (sea zoo forest desert) animals are nocturnal.
- 2. The opposite of the underlined word "wide awake" is (active asleep - tired - annoyed).
- Answer these questions:
 - Give a suitable title to the text.
 - 4. What can nocturnal animals do if there isn't enough light to see?

The Reader Granddad's Village

A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(5Ms)

- 1. Fares was very interested to see Granddad's village.
- Granddad planted an apple tree.
- Complete the following sentences:
 - liked to tell Fares about his life when he was a child.
 - 4. Waleed and his _____ showed Fares around Granddad's village.

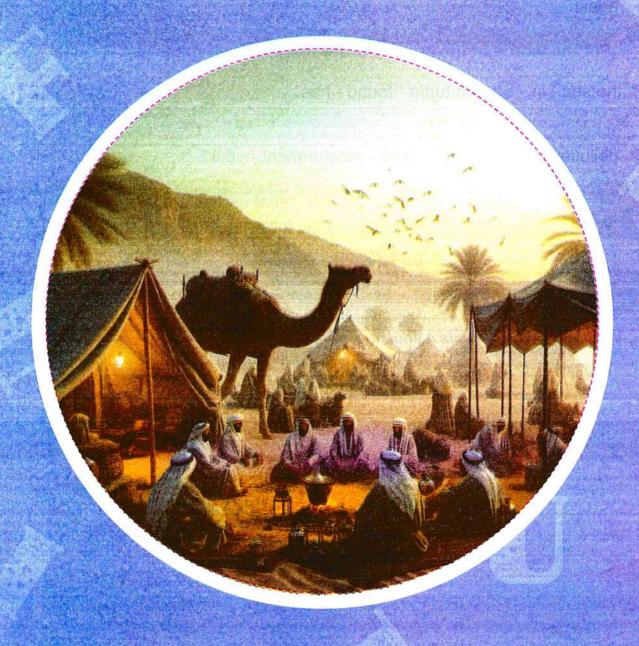


Non-Fiction Reader Part 2

Section 1

The Bedoin Tribes of the Desert

القبائل البدوية في الصحراء



The Reader

Main Vocabulary

•-----الكلمات الأساسية

Paragraph (1)

Bedouin tribes	قبائل بدوية	deserts	صحاري
North Africa	شمال أفريقيا	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
area	منطقة	thousands of years	آلاف السنين
South Sinai	جنوب سيناء	the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبري

Paragraph (2)

modern times	العصور الحديثة	old traditions	تقاليد قديمة
nomads	رحالة - بدو	different times	أوقات مختلفة
weather	الطقس - الجو	winter	الشتاء
summer	الصيف	migrate	يهاجر - يرتحل
grow	يزرع	fruit	فاكهة
vegetables	خضروات	oasis	واحق

Paragraph (3)

survive	ينجو - يبقہ علي قيد الحياة	dry place	مکان جاف
the natural world	العالم الطبيعي	tents	خيام
made from	مصنوع من	wool	صوف
put up	ينصب (الخيمة)	take down	ينزع - ينزل (خيمة)
birds	طيور	plants	نباتات
under the ground	تحت الأرض - جوفية	dig wells	يحفر آباڙا
return	يعود - يرجع	through the desert	عبر الصحراء



The Reader

Paragraph (4)

important	കി - രക്ക	way of life	آسنوب حياة
keep goats	يرعم - يربي الماعز	across the desert	عبر الصحراء
food	طعام .	water	ماء
goat milk	حليب الماعز	cheese	רָנִי
diet	نظام غذائي	goat meat	لحم الماعز
dishes	أكلات -أطباق	for a long time	لوقت طویل
pot	وعاء - قدر	herbs	أعشاب
spices	<mark>توابل - بهارات</mark>	camel	جمل
adapt well	يتكيّف جيدًا	desert life	الحياة الصحراوية
transportation	النقل - التنقل	skin	جلد
clothes	ملابس	shelter	مأوي
hair	شعر	rugs	سجاد

Paragraph (5)

hospitable	مضياف	welcome	يرحب
guests	ضيوف	dates	بلح
delicious	لذيذ - حلو المذاق	baked bread	خبز محمص
tea	شاي	coffee	قهوة
sugar	سکر	visitors	ر زائرین

Term 2

200

→ Step Ahead

Vocabulary Study S B Student's Book

shelter : a place that protects you from bad weatherhospitable : friendly and welcoming to visitors

migrate : travel to different places to live

tribe : people who live in a group and have the same traditions

nomads : people who travel with their families and animals to find food and water

well: a hole which goes to water under the ground

The Bedouin Tribes of the Desert

Paragraph (1)

The Bedouin tribes • are the oldest group of people in the deserts of North Africa • and the Middle East •. They have lived in the area for thousands of years. There are over 4 million Bedouin people in the world. About 1,200,000 are in Egypt, where they mostly live in South Sinai • and the Sahara Desert •



🕕 قبائل بدوية 💋 شمال أفريقيا 😉 الشرق الأوسط 🔮 جنوب سيناء 🧕 الصحراء الكبرى

Paragraph (2)

The Bedouin way of life is changing in modern times, but they have very old traditions ①. They are nomads ②, which means that they move to different places at different times of the year because of the weather ③. They live in the desert in the winter months when it is



cooler. In summer, it is too hot to be in the desert. They migrate to places where they can grow fruit and vegetables, such as an oasis o.

🕕 تقاليد قديمة 🝳 رحالة - بدو 🔞 الطقس 🐠 يهاجر - يترخّل 🧐 واحة

Term 2

Connect Plus 5

201

Paragraph (3)

It is difficult to survive • in the desert, but Bedouin people have learned how to live in a hot, dry place and how to use everything in the natural world • around them. Bedouin tents • are made from wool, and they are easy to put up and take down. Bedouins understand



almost everything about the natural world, and this helps them to find water in the desert. For example, if there are birds in one area or some small plants, there might be water under the ground . They know how and where to dig wells , and they return to these wells every year to find water as they migrate through the desert.

🕕 يبقب علب قيد الحياة 🙆 العالم الطبيعي 🔞 خيام 🐠 تحت الأرض - جوفية 👲 يحفرون آبارًا

Paragraph (4)

Animals are important to the Bedouin way of life. They keep goats • and travel across the desert • to find food and water for them. Goat milk and the cheese made from it are an important part of their diet. Goat meat is used in lots of dishes. It is cooked for a long time in a



pot with vegetables, herbs, and spices. But the most important animal is the camel. Camels have adapted well 3 to desert life 3, and they are used for transportation 5, milk, and food. Camel skin can be used to make clothes and shelter 5, and camel hair is used to make rugs 6.

🛈 يرعب الأغنام 💋 عبر الصحراء 쥥 تكيّفوا جيدًا 🐠 الحياة الصحراوية ᠪ التنقل 🧿 مأوب 🕜 سجّاد

Paragraph (5)

Bedouins are very hospitable open people; they will always welcome guests open to their homes and give them something to eat, such as dates or delicious baked bread. They drink hot tea and coffee, sometimes with lots of sugar open, and this is given to visitors, too.



🚺 مضیاف 🥝 یرحبون بالزائرین 🚯 بلح 🐠 سکر

Questions with their model answers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):		
1. The Bedouin way of life is the same as it has always been.	()
2. It is too hot to be in the desert in winter.	()
3. Bedouin people are good at using natural resources.	()
4. When Bedouins find water in the desert, they come back to the		,
same place several times.	()
5. Goat cheese is made in a pot with vegetables.	ì)
6. The Bedouin tribes are the oldest group of people in the desert.	ì)
7. There are over 8 million Bedouin people in the world.	ì)
8. About 1,200,000 Bedouin people are in Egypt.	ì)
9. Bedouins in Egypt mostly live in South Sinai only.	ì	Ś
10. Bedouin people don't have old traditions.	()
11. Nomads are moving to different places at different times of the year.	()
12. In summer, it's too hot to be in the desert.	Ì ()
13. Nomads migrate to oases in the summer.	()
14. Bedouin tents are made from wool.	()
15. Bedouin tents aren't easy to put up and take down.	()
16. Bedouins understand almost everything about the natural world.	()
17. Where there are birds and plants, there might be water under		
the ground.	-) (
Bedouins don't know how and where to dig wells		1

19. Goat meat is used in lots of dishes.

Connect Plus 5 -

The Reader 20. The most important animal in the desert is the elephant. Camels have adapted well to desert life. 22. Goats are used for transportation. 23. Camel skin can be used to make shelters. 24. Camel hair isn't used to make rugs. **25.** Bedouins aren't very hospitable people. **26.** Bedouins give the visitors hot tea and coffee. Complete the following sentences: 1. The are the oldest group of people in the desert of North Africa and the Middle East. 3. Bedouins in Egypt mostly lived in South and the Sahara Desert. 7. Bedouins are, which means that they move to different places at different times of the year. 8. Bedouins live in the desert in the months, when it is cooler. In, it is too hot to be in the desert. 10. Bedouins to places where they can grow fruit and vegetables, such as an oasis. 11. It is difficult to in the desert. 12. Bedouin people have learned how to live in a place. 13. are made from wool, and they are easy to put up and take down. 14. Bedouins understand almost everything about the, and this helps them to find water in the desert. 15. If there are birds in one area or small plants, there might be under the ground. 16. Bedouins know how and where to dig 17. Bedouins return to these wells every year to find water as they migrate through the 18. Animals are important to the Bedouin way of 19. Bedouins keep and travel across the desert to find food

204

and water for them.

Step Ahead

The Reader

- 20. and the cheese made from it, are an important part of Bedouins' diet.
- 21. is used in lots of dishes. It is cooked with vegetables, herbs, and spices.
- 22. The most important animal in the desert is the _____.
- 23. Camels have adapted well to _____.
- 24. Camels are used for , milk, and food.
- 25. can be used to make clothes and shelter.
- 26. Camel hair is used to make _____.
- 27. Bedouins are very _____ people.
- 28. Bedouins will always welcome _____ to their homes.

Answers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F	2- F	3- T	4- T	5- F	6- T	7- F	8- T	9- F
10- F	11- T	12- T	13- T	14- T	15- F	16- T	17- T	18- F
19- T	20- F	21- T	22- F	23- T	24- F	25- F	26- T	

Complete the following sentences:

1- Bedouin tribes	2- Egypt	3- Sinai	4- world
5- modern times	6- traditions	7- nomads	8- winter
9- summer	10- migrate	11- survive	12- hot, dry
13- Bedouin tents	14- natural world	15- water	16- wells
17- desert	18- life	19- goats	20- Goat milk
21- Goat meat	22- camel	23- desert life	24- transportation
25- Camel skin	26- rugs	27- hospitable	28- guests

Term .

Connect Plus 5

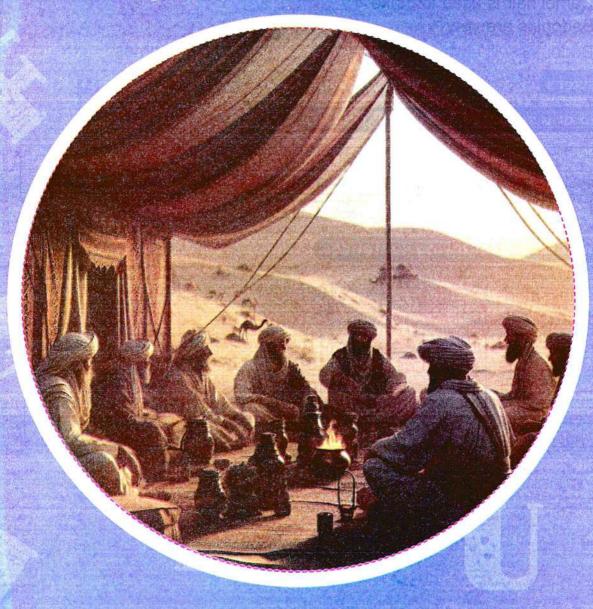
205

Non-Fiction Reader

Section 2

Bedouin Traditions

التقاليد البدوية



Main Vocabulary

------ الكلمات الأساسية

Paragraph (1)

falcon	صقر	amazing	مدهش
predator	مفترس	hunt	يصطاد
prey	فريسة	long distance	مسافة طويلة
quickly	بسرعة المسرعة	catch	يمسك - يصطاد
rabbits	أرانب	strong relationship	علاقة قوية
teach	يُعلّم	person	شخص

Paragraph (2)

get lost	يضل الطريق - يتوه	find	يجد
wind	ولياح	different ways	طرق مختلفة
east	اتجاه الشرق	west	اتجاه الغرب
the position of stars	موقع النجوم	direction	اتجاه
north	اتجاه الشمال	south	اتجاه الجنوب
shape	شکل	sand dunes	كثبان رملية

Paragraph (3)

traditions	تقاليد	poetry	شعر
remember	يتذكر	say	يقول
long poems	قصائد طويلة	weddings	حفلات الزفاف
parties	حفلات	festivals	مهرجانات - احتفالات
fast	سريعة	slow	بطيئة

Bedouin Traditions

Paragraph (1)

As well as carnels and goats, there is another animal which is important to Bedouins — the falcon ①. This amazing bird is a predator ② which can hunt for food ③ in the desert. It can see very well, so it can find prey ④ from a very long distance ⑤. Then it can fly quickly to



catch it. Bedouin People keep falcons and teach the birds to catch food such as rabbits for them. There is a very strong relationship obetween the person and the falcon!

🕦 صقر 🕢 مفترس 🜖 يصطاد من أجل الطعام 🐠 فريسة 👩 مسافة طويلة 🁩 علاقة قوية

Paragraph (2)

How do Bedouins know where to go?

It's easy to get lost on in the desert, but Bedouins use the sun to find east and west. They also know the position of stars on in the sky at night, and this shows which direction on is north. They can look at the shape



of sand dunes o, too. The direction which the wind o comes from makes the sand dunes develop in different ways. If the wind is coming from the east, the sand dunes will go from north to south. All of this helps Bedouins to know where to go in the desert.

🚯 يضل الطريق 📀 موقع النجوم 👩 اتجاه 🚯 كثبان رملية 🁩 الرياح

Paragraph (3)

Connect Plus 5 ⊢

What traditions do Bedouins have?

Poetry • is an important Bedouin tradition. People remember and say long poems • at weddings •, parties •, and festivals •. They also say shorter poems



as they travel on camels or work. These poems can be fast or slow, to help them as they work or move. The poems are often about family, the natural world, and their way of life.

🕦 شعر 🤌 قصائد 🕄 حفلات الزفاف 🐠 حفلات 🏮 مهرجانات - احتفالات

Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):		
1. The falcon isn't an important animal to Bedouins.	()
2. The falcon is a predator which can hunt for food in the desert.	()
3. The falcon can see very well and find its prey from a long distance.	()
4. The falcon can't fly quickly to catch its prey.	()
5. Bedouin people keep falcons and teach them to catch rabbits.	()
6. There isn't a strong relationship between the person and the falcon!	()
7. It's difficult to get lost in the desert.	()
8. Bedouins use the sea to find east and west.	()
9. The direction which the wind comes from makes the sand dunes		
develop in different ways.	()
10. If the wind is coming from the east, the sand dunes will go from		
north to south.	()
11. Poetry isn't an important Bedouin tradition.	() (

The Reader	
12. People say long poems at weddings, parties, and festivals. (
13. People also say long poems as they travel on camels or work. (
14. These poems can be fast or slow, to help Bedouins as they work or move. (
15. The poems are often about family, the natural world, and the way of life.	
2 Complete the following sentences:	
1. The is an important animal to Bedouins.	
2. The falcon is a	
3. The falcon can for food in the desert.	
4. The falcon can see very well, so it can find from a very long distance.	
5. Bedouin people falcons and teach the birds to catch for such as rabbits for them.	od
6. There is a very strong between the person and the falc	on
7. It's easy to in the desert.	
8. Bedouins use the sun to find and west.	
Bedouins also know the position of stars in the	nt,
10. They can look at the shape of, too.	
11. The direction from which the comes makes the sand dunes develop in different ways.	
12. If the wind is coming from the, the sand dunes will go from north to south.)
13is an important Bedouin tradition.	

→ Step Ahead

Term 2

210

The Reader

- **14.** People remember and say long at weddings, parties, and festivals.
- 15. Bedouins also say shorter poems as they travel on or work.
- **16.** These poems can be or slow, to help them as they work or move.
- 17. The poems are often about family, the, and the way of life.

Answers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F	2- T	3- T	4- F	5- T	6- F	7- F	8- F	9- T
10- T	11- F	12- T	13- F	14- T	15- T	1		

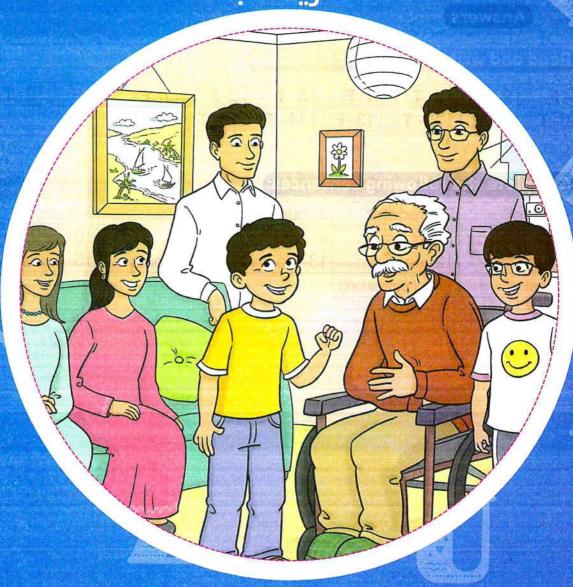
Complete the following sentences:

1- falcon	2- predator	3- hunt	4- prey	5- keep
6- relationship	7- get lost	8- east	9- sky	10- sand dunes
11- wind	12- east	13- Poetry	14- poems	15- camels
16- fast	17- natural world	1 7		

पिटमका 2



Granddad's Village قرية الجد



By Nicola Gardner

The characters الشخصيات



He lived in Alexandria with his parents and his granddad. When he wanted advice, he talked to his granddad to ask for his opinion. He welcomed Waleed when he and his family moved to Fares's building. He was very excited to visit his granddad's village. He felt sad that Granddad couldn't come on the journey. When he saw his granddad's work, he was very proud of him.

عاش فارس في الإسكندرية مع والديه وجده. وعندما أراد النصيحة، تحدث إلى جده لطلب رأيه. رحّبّ بوليد عندما انتقل هو وعائلته إلى المبنى الذي يسكنه. لقد كان متحمسًا جدًا لزيارة قرية جده، وشعر بالحزن لأن الجد لم ريستطع المجيء في هذه الرحلة. عندما رأى عمل جده، كان فخورًا جدًا به.



He is very proud of his dad and his son Fares.

إنه فخور جدًا بوالده وابنه فارس.



She asked her son Fares what he learned from his trip.

سألت ابنها فارس عما تعلمه من رحلته.



He is Fares's granddad. He is from a small village. He hasn't been to his village for over ten years. When he was a boy, he studied hard and played football in the park with his friends. He planted a fig tree, too. When he was in the village, he used to go to the theater a lot. He was a teacher. Now, he can't go on a journey with Fares because he is in a wheelchair.

هو جد فارس، وهو من قرية صغيرة. لم يذهب إلى قريته منذ أكثر من عشر سنوات. عندما كان صبيًا، درس بجِد ولعب كرة القدم في الحديقة مع أصدقائه. لقد زرع شجرة تين أيضًا. عندما كان في القرية، اعتاد الذهاب إلى المسرح كثيرًا. ر لقد كان مُعلمًا. الآن، لا يمكنه الذهاب في رحلة مع فارس لأنه على كرسي متحرك للمقعدين.

The Reader



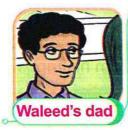
He was the same age as Fares. He moved from Cairo to Fares's building with his family. He became Fares's friend. He asked Granddad if he was a teacher. He and his family took Fares with them on a long journey to Granddad's village.

كان في نفس عمر فارس. انتقل من القاهرة إلى مبنى فارس مع عائلته، وأصبح صديقًا لفارس. سأل الجد إذا كان مدرسًا، وأخذ هو وعائلته فارس معهم في رحلة طويلة إلى قرية الجد.

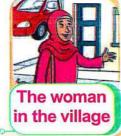


She visited Fares's family. She asked Granddad where he lived before. She was from the same village! She asked Granddad if he had seen the new supermarket. She also asked him if he thinks the village has changed. She asked Fares and his granddad to travel with her to the village.

زارت عائلة فارس، وسألت الجد أين كان يعيش من قبل. كانت من نفس القرية! سألت الجد إذا كان قد رأَّ السوبر ماركت الجديد. كما سألته عما إذا كان يعتقد أن القرية قد تغيرت ، وطلبت من فارس وجده السفر معها إلى القرية.



He visited Fares's family with his wife and his son Waleed. He showed Fares around Granddad's village. He showed Fares the school where his granddad worked as a teacher. زار عائلة فارس مع زوجته وابنه وليد. أخذ فارس في جولة حول قرية الجد، وأراه المدرسة التي كان يعمل فيها جده مدرسًا.



She is from Granddad's village. When Fares asked her about the park, she pointed to some houses and said that the park was there. She told Fares that the theater was across the road. She said that the people wanted to close the theater, but the villagers at the school kept it open for their children and grandchildren.

هي من قرية الجد. عندما سألها فارس عن الحديقة، أشارت إلى بعض المنازل وقالت إن الحديقة كانت هناك. أخبرت فارس أن المسرح كان على الجانب الآخر من الطريق. قالت إن الناس أرادوا إغلاق المسرح، لكن القرويين في المدرسة أبقوه مفتوحًا لأطفالهم وأحفادهم.



She lives in Grandad's house in the village. She invited Fares and Waleed to see her house. She chatted with the boys and showed them all the rooms in the house. She didn't change anything in the house. She got delicious fruit from the fig tree that Granddad planted in her garden when he was a little boy.

تعيش السيدة أميرة في منزل الجد في القرية. دعت فارس ووليد لرؤية منزلها، و تحدثت مع الأولاد وأطلعتهم على جميع الغرف في المنزل. لم تغير أي شيء في المنزل، و حصلت على ثمار لذيذة من شجرة التين التي زرعها / الجد في حديقتها عندما كان طفلاً صغيرًا.

Picture Dictionary

القاموس المصور



يدردش - يتحدث Grandma and I chatted a lot yesterday. It was great talking to her.

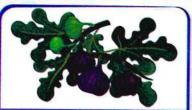


fig tree شجرة التين We have a fig tree at the back of our garden.



proud فخور Hassan was proud that he and his dad made a train truck.



We had fun decorating the house.



photo album ווּאָפָס מפּן My grandparents keep all their old photographs in a photo album.



wheelchair كرسي متحرك للمقعدين Nabila uses a wheelchair because she can't walk.

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

			ACT /
parents	الوالدين	granddad	جدّ
advice	نصيحة القليمة	opinion	رأي
helpful	متعاون - مفید	stories	قصص
tell	يخبر - يحكي	child	طفل
study hard	يدرس بجد	play football	يلعب كرة قدم
park	حديقة عامة - منتزه	friends	أصدقاء
young person	شاب - فتى	new	جديد
family	عائلة	building	بناية - مبنى
moved	انتقل	job	وظيفة
small village	قرية صغيرة	amazed	مندهش
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	changed	تغيّرت
used to	اعتاد أن	theater	مسرح بمعامضوي الم
watch television	يشاهد التليفزيون	use the internet	يستخدم الإنترنت
different	مختلف	replied	أجاب
exciting	مدهشة - شيّقة	teaching (n)	تدریس
university	جامعة	remember	يتذكر
planted	زرع	garden	حديقة
a little boy	ولد صغیر	grow well	تنمو بشكل جيد
cut down	يقطع - يزيل	favorite	مفضلة
travel	يسافر	difficult	ush
although	بالرغم من	trip	نزهة - رحلة
by train	بالقطار	beautiful	جميلة
theater	مسرح	point to	يشير إلي
across the road	علي الطريق	villagers	قرویین انج هما انته مهم

Term 2

216

→ Step Ahead

			The second secon
open (adj)	مفتوح	close (v)	يغلق
children	أطفال	grandchildren	أحفاد
idea	فكرة	address	عنوان
nice	لطيف	meet	يقابل
rooms	غرف - حجرات	outside	للخارج
fantastic	رائع	cool	لطيف
back to	يعود إلى	enjoy	يستمتع
invite	are and bus geau	present	هدتو
pleased	مسرور	hear about	يسمع عن
important	മിറ്റ - റമറ	learn of view ban av	يتعلم المستعلم
understand	مفهم	family history	تاريخ العائلة
great	رائع - عظیم	younger	أصغر سنًا

Part (1)



Fares lived in Alexandria with his parents of and his granddad of the When Fares wanted advice of the his opinion because he always had very helpful things of to say. Granddad always had stories of to tell, too, and liked to tell Fares about his life of when he was a child of the control of

🕦 والدیه 😥 جده 🕃 نصیحة 🚯 أشیاء مفیدة 5 قصص 6 حیاته 🕜 طفل

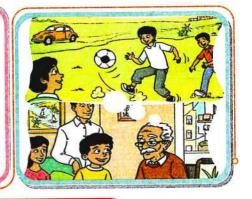


Derm 2

"What did you do when you were a boy, Granddad?" asked Fares.

Granddad said, "I studied hard 0, then I played football in a park with all my friends. It was a very good life for a young person 2."

በ كنت أدرس بجد



Questions with their model answers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):		
1. Fares lived in Alexandria with his parents and his granddad.	()
2. When Fares wanted advice, he talked to Grandmom to ask for		
her opinion.	()
Granddad always had very helpful things to say.	()
4. Granddad always had stories to tell.	()
5. Granddad liked to tell Fares about his life when he was a child.	()
6. Granddad studied hard and then played basketball in a park		
with all his friends.	()

2 Complete the following sentences:

- 1. Fares lived in with his parents and his granddad.
- 2. When Fares wanted, he talked to Granddad to ask for his opinion.
- 3. Granddad always had very things to say.

7. Fares lived in Aswan with his parents and granddad.

8. When Fares wanted advice, he always asked Granddad.

- 4. Granddad always had to tell, too.
- 5. liked to tell Fares about his life when he was a child.
- Granddad studied hard, then he played in a park with all his friends.
- studied hard and played football with his friends.

AB

AB (

AB (

Answers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T	2- F	3- T	4- T	
5- T	6- F	7- F	8- T	

Complete the following sentences:

1- Alexandria	2- advice	3- helpful	4- stories
5- Granddad	6-football	7- Granddad	

Part (2)

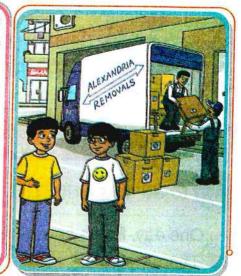
One day, Fares saw a new family moving into his building. There was a boy about the same age as him.

"Hi," said Fares, "I'm Fares. Welcome to the building!"

"I'm Waleed," said the boy. "We moved here from Cairo because my dad has a new job 6." "Oh, cool!" said Fares.

Soon (a), Fares and Waleed became good friends. [6] وظيفة جديدة [1]

🗿 بعد وقت قصير



One day, Waleed visited Fares with his mom and dad.

Waleed's mom asked Granddad, "Where did you live before?"

"I'm from a small village ••," said Granddad, and he told her the name. She was amazed ••, because her family was from the same village! "Have you seen the new supermarket?" she asked. "No, I haven't been to my village for over ten years."





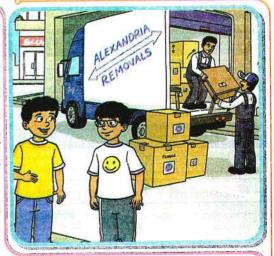
"Do you think the village has changed?" asked Waleed's mom.

"I don't know," Granddad said. "I used to go to the theater @ a lot. We loved it, but it might not be there now. Today, everyone watches television or uses the internet. It was very different @ then. Even schools have changed."

"You were a teacher, weren't you?" asked Waleed.

"Yes," Granddad replied.

"It was exciting @ teaching all those young people @, and some of them went to university @ because they studied hard."



و مسرح	በ هل تعتقد
🕜 مثیر	و مختلف
👩 الجامعة	💪 الشباب

Questions with their model answers

Read and	write T	(True)	OFF	(Ealen)
Neau anu	MALITE I	(IIIII)	01 1	(i disc).

 One day, Fares saw a new family moving into his building. 		()
There was a girl about the same age as Fares.		()
The family moved from Aswan because the father had a new	ı job.	()
4. Fares and Waleed became good friends.		()
One day, Waleed visited Fares with his mom and dad.		()
Granddad used to go to the theater a lot.		()
7. Granddad was a singer.		()
8. Fares made a new friend called Waleed.	AB	()
9. Waleed's family moved far from Fares's apartment building.	AB	()

2 Complete the following sentences:

- 1. One day, Fares saw a new moving into his building.
- 2. There was a boy about the same as Fares.



- 3. The family moved here from because the father had a new job.
- 4. Fares and Waleed became good
- 5. One day, visited Fares with his mom and dad.
- 6. Waleed's mom was amazed because her family was from the same
- 7. Granddad used to go to the a lot.
- 8. Today, everyone watches or uses the internet.
- 9. used to live in the same village as Granddad.
- 10. moved to Fares's apartment building with his mom and dad. AB

AB

Answers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T	2- F	3- F	4- T	5- T
6- T	7- F	8- T	9- F	

Complete the following sentences:

1- family	2- age	3- Cairo	4- friends	5- Waleed
6- village	7- theater	8- television	9- Waleed's mom	10- Waleed

Part (3)

"What other things do you remember about your village, Granddad?" asked Fares.

"Well, I remember 0 my old house 0. I planted some trees in the garden @ when I was a little boy. They were growing well when I moved from the house. But are they still there or were they cut down @? I don't know."

"Which was your favorite tree?" asked Fares.

"The fig tree 9," replied Granddad.



쥥 الحديقة 🧿 منزلي القديم 🚺 أتذكر 🕝 شجرة التين 🕜 قُطْعوا



"Next week, we're traveling to our village to see our family. Would Fares and his granddad like to come?" said Waleed's mom.

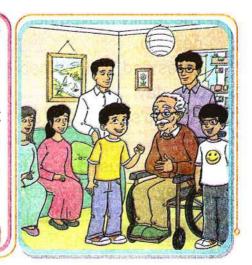
Granddad said, "I'm sorry, but it is very difficult for me to travel because I am in a wheelchair 2.

But I'm sure 5 Fares would like to go with you." Fares was very excited.

쥥 أنا متأكد

🧐 کرسي متحرك

👣 سنسافر



Although Granddad couldn't go on the trip 0, he was very excited for Fares. "Fares, you must go to all my favorite places 2 when you visit my village. Can you see if the theater and the school where I worked are still there? And find the park, too."

"Yes, Granddad," said Fares.

🧑 أماكن مفضلة

🛈 الرحلة



Questions with their model answers

W. 18-2 (1985)							
Dand	and	verito	TI	Truck	OF E	/F3	leal.
Read	allu	wille	1	Hue	OIF	(I a	156
ON STREET, COLUMN SALES	SECURE PROPERTY.		and the same of th	And the second			

1. Granddad remembered his old house.	()
2. Granddad planted some flowers in the garden when he was	*	1970
a little boy.	()
3. Granddad planted an orange tree.	()
4. Fares is in a wheelchair.	()
5. Granddad couldn't go on the trip, but he was very excited		100

6. It's too difficult for Granddad to travel because he uses a wheelchair.

AB ()

Term 2

222

for Fares.

Step Ahead

- Fares was very excited to travel with Waleed and his family.
- 8. Granddad was very sad because he couldn't go on the trip. ()
- The theater and the school were Granddad's favorite places in the village.

2 Complete the following sentences:

- 1. Granddad planted some trees in the when he was a little boy.
- 2. The tree was Granddad's favorite tree.
- 3. Granddad is in a
- 4. It's for Grandad to travel because he is in a wheelchair.
- 5. Granddad couldn't go on the
- 6. Granddad was very for Fares.

Answers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T	2- F	3- F	4- F	5- T
6- T	7- T	8- F	9- T	1 10

Complete the following sentences:

1- garden	2- fig	3- wheelchair	
4- difficult	5- trip	6- excited	

— Part (4)

Fares traveled with Waleed's family by train ①. It was a long but beautiful journey ②.

Fares was sad ② that Granddad couldn't come on the journey, but he was very interested ③ to see Granddad's village.

🧿 رحلة جميلة	🛈 بالقطار
🚱 مهتم جدًا	🔞 حزین



Derm 7

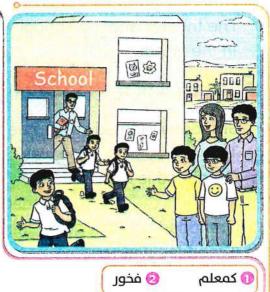
Connect Plus 5

223

The next day, Waleed and his dad showed Fares around Granddad's village. Waleed's dad said, "This is the school where your granddad worked as a teacher 0."

"I'm very proud @ to think Granddad taught here and helped the young people," said Fares. "Is the theater still here? And where is the park?"

"Hmm," said Waleed's dad. "I don't know, but let's ask someone from the village."



Soon, they saw a woman by the road 0.

"Excuse me," said Fares, "do you know where the park is?"

"It was here," she said, pointing to some new houses. "But they built these houses last year."

"What about the old theater? Is that near here?" asked Fares.

"The theater's across the road," said the woman. "They wanted to close it, but the

villagers 2 at the school kept it open for our children 3 and grandchildren 3.

"Fares was very happy that the people of the village still wanted the theater.



0 في الطريق

🧿 القرويون

📵 لأطفالنا

👩 أحفادنا



225

Questions with their model answers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):		
1. Fares traveled with Waleed's family by car.	()
2. It was a long but beautiful journey.	()
3. Fares was happy that Granddad couldn't come on the journey.	()
4. Fares was very interested to see Granddad's village.	()
5. The villagers at the school kept the theater open for their childre	n	
and grandchildren.	()
6. Fares was very angry that the people of the village still wanted		
the theater.	()
Last year, they built some houses where the theater used to be.		
AB	()
2 Complete the following sentences:		
1 and Waleed showed Fares the school where Grand used to teach.	dad	d AB
2. Fares traveled to the with Waleed and his family.	*	AB
3. They saw houses where the used to be.		AB
4. Fares traveled with Waleed's family by		
5. It was a long but beautiful		
6. Fares was very interested in seeing Granddad's		
7. Waleed and his showed Fares around Granddad's	villa	ige.
8. The kept the theater open for their children and grandchildren.		ŭ
9. Fares was very that the people of the village still wa	ante	d
the theater.	ž	
10. The theater is the road.		
11. Granddad worked as a at school.		

Connect Plus 5

Answers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F	2- T	3- F	4- T	
5- T	6- F	7- F		

Complete the following sentences:

1- Waleed's dad	2- village	3- park	4- train
5- journey	6- village	7- dad	8- villagers
9- happy	10- across	11- teacher	

Part (5)

Then Fares had an idea 0.

"Let's go to the house where Granddad used to live! I have the address ②." Fares and Waleed walked through the village and to the house, where they saw a woman working in the garden.

"Hello!" said the woman.

"Hello. My name's Fares. My granddad used to live in this house when he was younger. Now he lives with me in Alexandria."

"It's nice to meet you," said the woman. "My name's Mrs Amira. Would you like to see the house?"

"Yes, please!" said Fares.



🕦 فكرة ② العنوان

Mrs Amira chatted • to the boys and showed them all the rooms in the house. "I love this house!" said Fares.

Mrs Amira said, "We didn't decorate of it because we loved it when we moved in, so we didn't change anything."

🕡 تحدثت 🧑 نزین (نزخرف)



"My granddad planted some small trees in your garden when he was a little boy," said Fares. "Can I see them?"

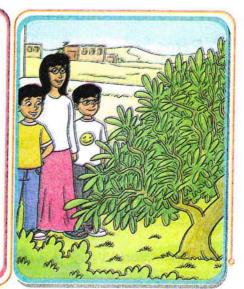
"Did he plant a fig tree?" asked Mrs Amira.

"That's my favorite tree. We get lots of delicious fruit of from it every year."

They went outside oto see the fantastic fig tree.

"Wow!" said Waleed, "that's a cool tree!" Fares felt proud of 4 his granddad's work.

🕕 ثمار لذيذة 💈 ذهبوا للخارج 🔞 الرائعة 🗿 فخور بـ



On the train back to Alexandria, Waleed's mom asked, "Did you enjoy the trip to the village, Fares?"

"Oh, yes." said Fares, "I learned a lot about Granddad when he was younger. Thank you so much for inviting me • on this trip."

"You are very welcome," said Waleed's mom.

0 لدعوتي



Questions with their model answers

SERVICE TURES, INVESTIGATION	MINERALLY PROJECT AND ASS			
1 Read and	write T	(True)	or F	False)
		()		

- Mrs Amira liked the house so much that she didn't want to decorate it.

 AB (
- 2. Fares met some people who knew Granddad when he was a boy.
- Fares and Waleed visited the house where Granddad used to live.
- 4. Mrs Amira chatted to the boys and showed them all the rooms in the house.

Verm 2

AB (

AB (

5. Fares felt proud of his granddad's work.	()
6. Fares learned a lot about Granddad when he was younger.	()
7. Fares thanked Waleed's mom for inviting him on the trip.	()
8. Mrs Amira's favorite tree is the mango tree.	()
9. Fares and Waleed's family went back to Alexandria by car.	()

10. Fares didn't enjoy the trip to the village. Complete the following sentences:

- 1. Fares and Waleed walked through the and to the house.
- 2. Mrs Amira to the boys and showed them all the rooms in the house.
- 3. They went to see the fantastic fig tree.
- 4. Fares felt of his granddad's work.
- 5. Mrs Amira didn't Granddad's house.
- 6. Mrs Amira's favorite tree is the tree.
- 7. Fares and Waleed's family went back to

Answers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T	2- T	3- T	4- T	5- T
6- T	7- T	8- F	9- F	10- F

Complete the following sentences:

1- village	2- chatted	3- outside	4- proud	
5- decorate	6- fig	7- Alexandria	8- train	

Part (6)

When he got home, Fares told his family about his trip.

"Granddad, I have a present of for you," he said. Fares gave Granddad a beautiful photo album of the showed all the places of Fares visited in the village: the school, the theater, and Granddad's old house and garden. Granddad was very pleased of to hear about all the buildings.

በ هدية 👩 ألبوم صور 🔞 كل الأماكن 🛭 سعيد جدًا



"What did you learn on your trip?" asked Fares's mom. "I learned a lot of things," said Fares. "For example, it's important to learn about your family when they were younger, so that you can understand of your family history of the when you were younger, Granddad. You are so important of to us." "Thank you, Fares!" said Granddad.

"And I am very proud you have learned so much, Fares!"

said Fares's dad.



👩 تاریخ عائلتك

🥤 تفهم

Questions with their model answers

📵 مهم جدًا

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False)	1	Read and	write T	(True)	or F	(False)	:
--	---	----------	---------	--------	------	---------	---

- 1. Fares gave Granddad a beautiful photo album. (
- 2. The album showed all the places Fares visited in the city. ()
- 3. It isn't important to learn about your family when they were younger. ()
- 4. Fares recorded a video of his trip to Granddad's village.

 AB ()

Connect Plus 5 (229)

- 5. Fares gave Granddad a box of cookies from the village when he came back. AB (
- 6. Fares's dad was proud that Fares learned so much.

AB	1	١
AB	(1

Complete the following sentences:

- 3. It's _____ to learn about your family when they were younger.
- 4. Fares gave Granddad a photo album with lots of photos of his



5. Fares learned a lot about his on his trip.



Answers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T	2-F	3- F	
4-F	5- F	6- T	

Complete the following sentences:

1- photo album	2- buildings	3- important
4- village	5- family history	

Part 3

Listening Scripts



My name is Emily. There are a lot of different ways that people spend their free time here in Canada. When it's warm out, people have a picnic in the park. We have a lot of green spaces in my city, but the only problem is that it rains a lot. So, when it's raining, I go swimming. The pool is indoors.

Question



When Nesma was in Alexandria last June, she went to the aquarium. She liked seeing the colorful fish and sea animals in the aquarium. It isn't very big, but there are many different things to see there. She learned a lot about fish in the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea, as well as fish that live in the Nile.



Lara and her family are on vacation near the Red Sea in Dahab. They always go camping in the summer. Lara usually helps her dad to put up the tent. The beaches are amazing. The sun is really hot there. They have to put on sunscreen so they don't burn. They usually have a picnic on the beach. Lara's mom takes all their favorite food. They enjoy their time there.

Term 2

Listening Scripts



There are two things that cause the tides: the moon and the sun. But the main effect is from the moon. When it moves around the Earth, its gravity pulls the water on Earth towards it. This causes a high tide in the water nearest the moon. On the opposite side of Earth, the moon's gravity pulls the Earth away from the water, so you get another high tide. Question



Nocturnal animals sleep in the day but are awake at night. They hunt for their prey or look for food when it is dark. Other animals, like camels and donkeys, are diurnal, which means they are awake in the day. We see these more often than nocturnal ones!

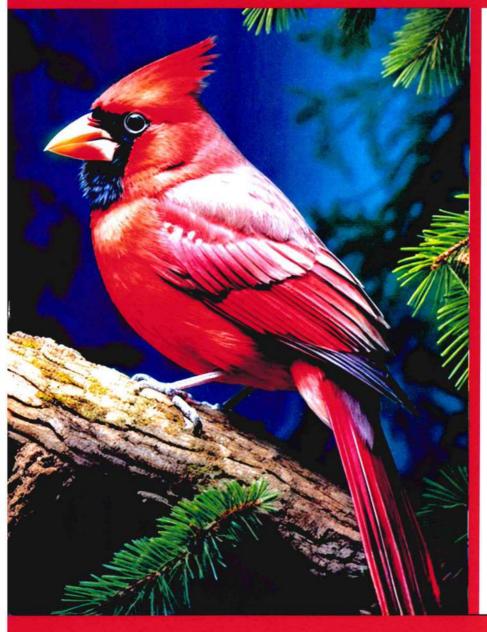
Question



Did you know that when people put garbage into a canal or river, it often goes into the sea? That is why there is a lot of plastic and other garbage in the Mediterranean Sea and other seas. This is very bad for fish and sea animals. We should volunteer to clean the canals in our neighborhood. We can use plastic bags and special nets to collect the garbage. This will leave the canals clean and tidy. Question



CONNECT Plus





Units Revision School Exams Answer Key



By a group of specialists

Contents

Part 1 Revision on Unit (5) 3
Unit (5) Test (1) 7
Revision on Unit (6) 10
Unit (6) Test (2) 15
Revision on Unit (7) 18
Unit (7) Test (3) 23
Revision on Unit (8) 26
Unit (8) Test (4) 30

School Exams

33



Listening Scripts

61



Answer Key

63



Revision on Unit



Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

skiing - sunscreen - time - camping - tent

2 Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

put on - record - campfire - trail - put up

Mona: Hi, Amira. We want to show you the beautiful mountains near

here. So we've decided to take you camping.

Amira: Hi, Mona. Who is going to drive us there?

Mona: Uncle Wael is going to drive us to the start of the 0 ...

It is a rough path across the desert.

Amira: What are we going to do there?

Mona: We are going hiking into a deep valley. That place is very

beautiful. We're going to take photos and 9 videos.

Amira: Can we reach the campsite easily?

Mona: Yes. We have a paper map and our phones. Ali is going to

• the tent. Mona is going to make the •

Aunt Mariam is going to cook.



Connect Plus 5

Unit 5

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

nature – foxes – pictures – learn – taking

My name is Ramy. My favorite hobby is wildlife photography. Wildlife photography is when you take 0 of animals, birds, and plants • photos of them and learning about them. I have about 300 wildlife photos. My favorite animals are fennec They're gorgeous.

Grammar Revision

Choose the correct answer:

Verbs + -ing

- 1. I hate (stay stays stayed staying) at home alone.
- 2. I enjoy (have having had to have) picnics on sunny days.
- 3. I love (playing to playing play played) video games with my friends.
- I don't like (drink drank drunk drinking) tea or coffee.
- 5. Talia and Lama like (to do doing done did) arts and crafts after school.
- 6. We love (swimming -swims -swam -to swimming) in the sea on vacation.
- 7. I hate (writes written wrote writing) emails on my phone.
- 8. She doesn't like (put putting to putting puts) up tents.
- Hanaa enjoys (to do done doing does) arts and crafts.
- 10. At home, we like (had have having to having) ful medames for breakfast.

Choose the correct answer:

Comparison (Adjectives)

- 1. I'm (young younger youngest the youngest) than my friend.
- 2. My school is (big bigger biggest the biggest) building in the street.
- 3. Tarek thinks that skiing is (the most -the least -more -less) exciting than fishing. He doesn't like fishing.

Step Ahead

- 4. Swimming is (more less the most the least) popular sport in our family. We love it!
- 5. Cars are (the least expensive the most expensive less expensive more expensive) to buy than airplanes.
- 6. Painting is (more the most the least least) relaxing than playing basketball.
- 7. My friends don't like running. It's (more popular less popular the most popular the least popular) activity in my class.
- 8. Watching TV is (the most dangerous the least dangerous more dangerous less dangerous) than skiing.
- 9. Which story is the (the least more most less) interesting?
- 10. Which sport is (less exciting than more exciting least exciting the most exciting) football or basketball?
- 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
 - 1. popular most football sport The is.
 - 2. hobby photography favorite is My wildlife.

 - 3. summer We camping go in the.

 - 4. popular most the activity Swimming is.
 - **>**
 - 5. spending enjoy my family time with I.

winter - the - skiing - go - in - We.

Unit 5

- 7. the Cooking popular least is activity.
- 8. activity free-time What like you do?
 - ?
- 9. likes Mona sports school playing after.
- **.....**
- 10. and crafts you arts Do do?
- 11. time - have - I - a lot of - free - don't.
 -
- 12. father to dinner in weekends takes Our us.
- 13. videos Do online post your you?
-
- 14. brother enjoys My staying older home.
- Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

▶ Ideas to help you:

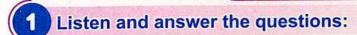
"Doing arts and crafts"

- o Why is this hobby interesting? O How often do you do it? O What shapes do you do?

 - o What colors do you like most?



- Unit 5 Test 1







نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (61) آخر الكتاب. 🥤

- 1. What is Sara's favorite hobby?
- 2. What does Sara's dad do?
- 3. Where does Sara's dad take people to see birds?
- 4. What has Sara's dad taught her?
- Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:(4Ms)

play - go - have - weather - cold

- Rania: How do you spend your free time in Canada?
- Emily: When it's warm out, people a picnic in the park.

We have a lot of green spaces in my city.

Rania: How is the @ in Canada?

Emily: It rains a lot.

Rania: What do you do when it's raining?

Emily: When it's raining, I 6 swimming. The pool is

indoors, so we don't have to worry about the rain or even the very

winters which we have here.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Taking photographs is MrAshraf's hobby. He has got a modern Japanese camera. He likes going to beautiful gardens and farms. He enjoys photographing flowers, trees and birds. He also likes photographing young children. This is not easy because they move too quickly and



Unit 5

don't stop. Mr Ashraf sometimes goes to weddings or birthday parties to take photographs. He can also photograph himself among his family because his camera has an automatic timer.

- A Choose the correct answer:
 - 1. Mr Ashraf's camera is made in (China Japan Egypt Germany).
 - 2. It's (easy difficult modern boring) to photograph children.
- B Answer these questions:
 - 3. What does the underlined word (they) refer to?
 - 4. How can Mr Ashraf photograph himself with his family?
- The Reader "Granddad's Village"
- A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(5Ms)

1. Granddad always had stories to tell.

- ()
- 2. Granddad liked to tell Fares about his life when he was a child.
- B Complete the following sentences:
- 3. Fares lived in with his parents and his granddad.
- 4. When Fares wanted, he talked to Granddad to ask for his opinion.
- 5 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

- Unit five is (the most difficult more difficult than less difficult less difficult) than Unit 6.
- 2. The horse is one of the (fast faster fastest the fastest) animals.
- 3. Do you hate (make makes made making) models?
- 4. I think reading is (the most less than least more) useful hobby.

8

Step Ahead

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M		
. natu	ral - We - birds - watch - environment - in - their.	
spor	ts - doing - What - like - you - do?	
W	rite an email of (50) words to your friend Maha: (7Ms)	
	er what you and your family do in your free time. Your email address nar@yahoo.com, Your friend's email address is maha@hotmail.com.	
rom		
Го	The state of the s	
Subjec	i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	
	, in the second of the second	
••••••		
	BABORE LIFE CROSS SELECTION OF PROPERTIES SERVICES	
75 176		
	nak salah 1973 di kacamatan di kacamatan 1974 kitaban di kacamatan di kacamatan di kacamatan di kacamatan di k	

Revision on Unit 6

Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

sea animals – ruins – Nile – shows – aquarium
Omnia: What places did you visit when you were in Alexandria?
Nesma: I visited the 0
Omnia: How was it?
Nesma: I really liked seeing the colorful fish and 2
Omnia: What else did you visit?
Nesma: I visited the € of the ancient Roman amphitheater.
Omnia: Fantastic! Tell me about it.
Nesma: A long time ago, people used it for musical, meetings, and plays.

2 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

everything - something - nobody - everybody - Somebody

पिटमका 2

10

Step Ahead



Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

/	
le med	Temple – Opera – statues – Tower – famous
Ahmed	: What is this book about, Waleed?
Waleed	: It's about famous places in the world.
Ahmed	: Good. Can you tell me about a famous place in Italy?
Waleed	: Yes. The Leaning • of Pisa. This building has
	lots of arches.
Ahmed	: Awesome. Tell me about a famous place in Egypt.
Waleed	: The Karnak @ in Luxor. The old buildings there
	are made of stone. Everyone feels very small when they see
	the 10 here. here and on publish staff at F
Ahmed	: Is there any famous places in Australia?
Waleed	: Yes, Sydney House in Sydney. The roof of this

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

building looks like the bottom of a boat.

planetarium - display - books - planets - harbor



Unit 6

5 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

anything - nobody - anybody - nothing - everything

Hi, I'm Fares. There are many places to visit in my country. My favorite place is the beach near our house. It's beautiful and quiet, and knows about it. We don't usually meet when we go there! I also like the café next to my grandparents' house. Don't eat some before you go there. The cakes are very big, and there is some there I don't like!

Grammar Revision

- 6 Choose the correct answer:
- Indefinite pronouns
- 1. Is there (nothing no one anything everything) you want, Injy?
- 2. There isn't (nobody something somebody anybody) inside the room.

 Ali must be somewhere else.
- 3. I bought (everything everybody something nothing) we need in the market this morning. I don't need to go to the market again.
- **4.** (Anybody Everybody Nobody Nothing) says the cakes are really good here, so I want to try them.
- **5.** I'll buy you (nobody something everybody somebody) sweet next time we're out shopping.
- **6.** (Everything Nothing Anybody Something) in the park is exciting. It's fun to go there.
- 7. (Somebody Everybody Nothing Nobody) drops litter here. The place is always clean.
- **8.** There's always (nobody nothing anything something) to do in Dream Park. I like it very much.



- 9. (Nobody Everybody Somebody Something) in my family loves the park. It's a wonderful place.
- 10. There was (something someone anything nothing) to do at home, so I went out.
- 11. Everybody (am is are were) ready for the test.
- 12. Nobody (want are wanting wanting wants) to go out in that cold weather.

7 Choose the correct answer

to + infinitive

- Builders use steel and glass (for or to because) make buildings look modern.
- 2. I like going to movie theaters (because for but to) watch new movies.
- 3. People go to shopping malls to (buys buying buy bought) new clothes.
- 4. I go to the club to (met meeting meet meets) friends.
- 5. Designers use plants and fountains to (help helped helps helping) keep the building cool.
- 6. I'm going to phone my cousin to (asking asked ask asks) him to come to our house.
- 7. We're planting lots of plants there to (got gets get getting) more nature into our cities.
- People make rooftop gardens to (keep keeping keeps kept) people cool.
- 8 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
 - 1. is This building modern made of steel.
 - 2. important a has Alexandria harbor very.

.....

Term 2

Unit 6

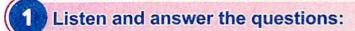
3. did - see - they - the planetarium - in - What?	7
4. Everything - museum - is - at - and important - the - old.	
5. visited - the - We - Citadel - Qaitbay - of.	
6. favorite - My - is - the - place - sports center.	
7. did - Nesma - around - How - travel - Alexandria?	
8. can - You - rent - to travel - bikes - around.	
9. can - see - you - in - What - the photo?	
10. building - Nothing - tall - in - this - is old.	
9 Write an email of (50) words to your American friend	

- Tell him about a visit you've made to the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. Tell him when you went, where the museum is, what you saw there, what you liked most, and who you met there. Your email address is amr@yahoo.com, and Bell's email address is bell@gmail.com.

From	1
To	
0.1.	
Subject	T :

(2.22222300000	

Unit 6 Test 2







نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (61) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. Where did Amira go on vacation?
- 2. When did she visit Ras Muhammed National Park?
- 3. How did Adam feel during the boat trip?
- 4. What activity did Amira and her family try at the National Park?
- 2 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:(4Ms)

traffic - paths - places - Alexandria - tram

Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

Alexandria is a famous city in Egypt. People from different nationalities come to visit it. They usually come in the summer to enjoy its blue sea and sunny weather. So, Omar went there on his last holiday to spend a week with his aunt. He took the train at seven o'clock. The train took four hours from Cairo to Alexandria. At the station, he found his cousins waiting



Connect Plus 5 -

Unit 6

for him. They welcomed him. His aunt prepared a delicious meal. After lunch, he and his cousins went shopping. The streets were crowded with people. The next morning, they went to the beach and enjoyed swimming and playing. It was a very nice holiday.

A Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Omar lives in (Alexandria Cairo Mansoura Fayoum).
- 2. The underlined word "holiday" means (summer month year vacation).

B Answer these questions:

- 3. Why do people visit Alexandria in the summer?
- 4. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

The Reader "Granddad's Village"

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- (5Ms)
- 1. Fares lived in Aswan with his parents and granddad.
- 2. When Fares wanted advice, he always asked Granddad.
- B Complete the following sentences:
- 3. Granddad always had very things to say.
- 4. studied hard and played football with his friends.
- 5 Choose the correct answer:

- (2Ms)
- 1. I went with my dad to his office yesterday. I didn't know (nobody somebody anybody nothing) there.
- 2. There was (nothing something anything everything) interesting, so I left the party.



Step Ahead

- 3. We'll go to the restaurant to (has have had having) some food.
- **4.** I love (nobody somebody anybody everybody) in my family. They are all nice.
- 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)
- 1. know What you do about Alexandria?

The property of the control of the property of

2. Khalifa - Burj - lots of - has - windows - glass.

Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"Khan El-Khalili"

Ideas to help you: famous - Cairo - market - stores - tourists - visit - shopping - souvenirs - artifacts



Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

officers - woman - man - most powerful - fair

2 Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:

lunchtime – relax – meal – bedtime – tired

Coach: Why is sleep important?

Coach: That's right. So here are some tips for how to sleep well. First,

if you don't feel sleepy at @ have a shower or

bath. This will help your body and muscles to 6

Younis: What else, coach?

Coach: If you need to go to sleep soon, don't use phones or tablets

close to bedtime.

Younis: Is there anything else?

Coach: Yes. Don't eat a big @close to bedtime.

Younis: OK, thanks, Coach.



3 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

full - sleep - Earth - clocks - gravity

4 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

sodas - online - exercise - hours - healthy

5 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

high - tides - shallow - deep - low



6 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

safe - comfortable - hiking - snacks - compass

You should always take care of yourself. Here are some tips for keeping

when you go hiking. Walk with a group of friends or family so that you won't be alone. Take a map and a so that you won't get lost! Take a phone so that you can get help if you need it. Wear good so boots so that your feet will feel so Take lots of water and snacks. Wear a hat and put on some sunscreen.

Grammar Revision

7 Choose the correct answer:

Giving Advice

- 1. (Found Finding Find Finds) a book you like, and read it at bedtime.
- 2. Don't (listened listens listening listen) to loud music at bedtime.
- 3. You (should mustn't shouldn't can't) have a shower every day.
- 4. If you don't (feels feel felt feeling) sleepy at bedtime, have a shower or a bath.
- 5. You (should shouldn't can must) go to bed at midnight.
- If you need to go to sleep soon, (used use don't use using) phones or tablets close to bedtime.
- 7. You (should can shouldn't must) eat chocolate three times a day.
- 8. If you eat a big meal before bedtime, your body (has have don't have haven't) to work too hard to digest the food.
- 9. You (should shouldn't mustn't can't) be kind to your friends.
- 10. If the street lights (am was are is) bright outside your room, make sure you have good curtains.
- 11. You (should can't shouldn't mustn't) help your family at home.
- 12. If you (sleeps sleep doesn't sleep don't sleep) well for many nights, tell your parents about the problem.

Choose the correct answer:

Conjunctions

1. Take lots of water and snacks (so that - because - but - to) you won't get thirsty or hungry.

- 2. Drink lots of water (because but to so that) stay well.
- 3. Close your curtains during the day (but to because so that) the sun will not make the rooms hot.
- 4. Don't eat sweets so that (have to have you will have you won't have) good teeth.
- 5. You should take a phone (to so that so but) get help if you need it.
- 6. Open your windows at night (or so that to but) cooler air can come in.
- 7. You can wear light-colored, loose clothes to (feeling feels feel to feel) more comfortable.
- 8. Wear light-colored, loose clothes (so that but to or) you will feel more comfortable.
- 9. Take a flashlight (because but to so that) see when it's dark.
- 10. Do sports and have enough sleep (to so that but or) you can stay healthy.
- 9 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
 - 1. at went to the usual bed time Marwan.
 - 2. sunglasses Wear your to protect eyes.

 - 3. A changes full moon our clocks body.
 - 4. sun The makes the hot rooms.
 - 5. you read at bedtime Do books?
 - ?»: dis

- 6. like We walking the along coast.
- 7. a shower always in I the morning have.
- 8. you like go to swimming Would?



Unit 7

?

10 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Fady:

	Tell him some tips for how to sleep	well, and	the importance	e of good
	sleep. Your email address is hani@	vahoo.com	, and your frier	nd's email
Specific Spe	address is fady@school.com.			
1				

From	:		
To	:		
Subject	·		
li i		production of the second	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		

127222000000000000000000000000000000000			

Unit 7 Test 3

1 Listen and answer the questions:





(6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (61) آخر الكتاب.

1. What is a good activity to help you feel sleepy?

2. What is the best time to go to bed?

3. What should your bedroom be like when you sleep?

4. What should you avoid doing in bed?

Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:(4Ms)

bright - curtain - sleepy - awake - moon

Mom: What's the matter, Marwan?

Marwan: I can't sleep! I'm wide
I'm not sleepy at all!

Mom : I know why you can't sleep. We have a full ② tonight.

Marwan: Why does the full moon stop me from sleeping?

Mom: It's mainly because the full moon is very 9, so

our body clocks think it's still daytime.

Mom: I'm going to put this thick curtain across the window. You will

feel 4 soon.

Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms)

Life is changing now. Before, many people worked with their hands and bodies. The job which they did made them fit. We don't need to be strong to do our work now. We have machines and computers to help. All the housework can also be done easily. We don't get much exercise in other parts of our life. We drive to work or catch a train, bus or taxi.



Connect Plus 5 (23)

Unit 7

These are some of the reasons why a lot of people are now putting on weight. Of course some people, like farmers or builders, are fit because of their work, but people who work in shops or offices aren't usually very fit.

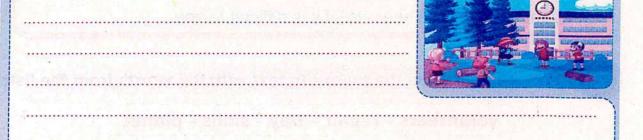
A Choose the correct answer:

- 1. In the past, people were (fat fit heavy lazy).
- 2. The opposite of the underlined word "Before" is (After So that Because When).
- Answer these questions:
 - 3. What helps people do their jobs now?
 - 4. Why are many people putting on weight?
- The Reader Granddad's Village
- A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (5Ms)
 - 1. Fares is in a wheelchair.
 - 2. Grandad used to go to the theater a lot. ()
 - B Complete the following sentences:
 - 3. Fares and Waleed became good
 - 4. Waleed's mom was amazed because her family was from the same
- 5 Choose the correct answer: (2Ms)
 - 1. You (should shouldn't mustn't can't) drink some warm milk at night and in the morning.

- 2. If you feel hungry at bedtime, (eat eats eating don't eat) chocolate.
 The sugar keeps you awake!
- 3. You (should shouldn't must can) go to bed too late.
- 4. Wear loose clothes (so that but to because) you will feel more comfortable.
- 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)
 - 1. helps What you get to to sleep?
- 2. The moves moon around earth the.
- Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"Our schools"

Ideas to help you: learn - many - subjects - read - write - do sports exercises - love school - teachers - friends



Revision on Unit (8)

/	4000	
1		Read and complete the following text with the words from the list
V		Read and complete the following text with the words from the list
1	1	《首新》,表现的是一种,在一种的一种的一种的一种的一种的一种的一种的一种的一种的一种的一种的一种的一种的一

exciting - excited - teacher - community - needs

2 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

sense - nocturnal - eyes - ears - dark

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

volunteers – repair – Day – skills – planet

Do you have things at home which are old and broken? Don't throw them away! Help the and save money. Bring them to our Repair Day, and we will try to them. We can repair clothes, furniture, electronic devices, and lots more! We have from the community with lots of different from and they are ready to help you. Come to the Town Hall on Saturday, May 7th, from 10 am to 5 pm.

पिटमा 2

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

hide - Predators - darkness - pollution - lights

Nocturnal animals have some problems. There is often light in cities. Light pollution is when there are artificial at night, for example, from houses, stores, offices, and traffic. This is a problem for nocturnal animals. There are fewer hours of and fewer places where animals can hide or look for food. Such as foxes can see better in places with light pollution, which makes it more difficult for prey to hide.

5 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:

stuck - careful - bite - wild - charity

When we were on the beach, we saw a fishing net. A turtle got in the net. The net was around the turtle's neck and flippers. We wanted to touch it. Sea turtles don't a, but we need to be some with wild animals. We wanted to help it. So, we phoned a some which rescues turtles.

Grammar Revision

- 6 Choose the correct answer: Promise Request Offer
 - 1. I (will can should won't) go to the party. I don't like the noise they make there.
- 2. She (shouldn't will mustn't won't) enjoy the picnic a lot. She likes going to parks and open places.
- 3. He (mustn't can't can won't) buy that expensive car. He has enough money.
- 4. She won't (came coming come comes) with us to the party.



Unit 8

- 5. (Can Were Are Am) you help me?
- I will (boiled boil boils boiling) some eggs for Mom.
- 7. (Are Has Have Will) you come the Repair Day?
- 7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
 - 1. your I please borrow Can bike,?
 - ?
 - 2. the cities lots of are lights in There.

- 3. help clean you I'll the kitchen.
- 4. Nocturnal animals sense of have good hearing a very.

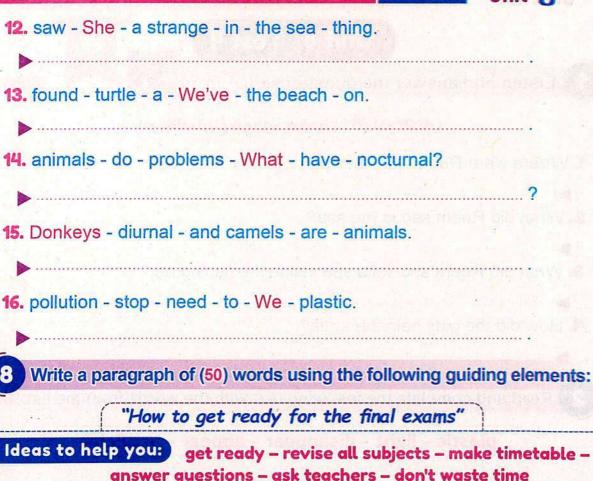
>

- 5. rainwater- The library the damaged yesterday.
- 6. big causes in problems the sea Plastic pollution.
- **>**

>

- 7. for you food make Can the party?
- ?
- 8. heat Concrete buildings and absorb can.
- 9. do hear you a concert What at? ?
- 10. fox is animal The fennec a nocturnal.
- **>**
- 11. were the playing on beach They.

28

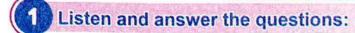


ldeas to help you: get ready – revise all subjects – make timetable – answer questions - ask teachers - don't waste time



CHAPTER - CALLED A ME A COLOR COLOR COLOR COLOR COLOR

Unit 8 Test 4





(6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (61) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. Where were Reem and Talia playing?
- 2. What did Reem see in the sea?
- 3. What did Reem and Talia see inside the fishing net?
- 4. How did the girls help the turtle?
- Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:(4Ms)

plastic - light - disappear - appear - artificial

Humans cause many problems for the Earth. One of these problems is pollution. Did you know that humans make more gillight now than at any time in the past? Cities are getting bigger, and

stores, houses, and traffic all make light. Another problem is 6pollution. Did you know that it can take 400 years for plastic to 6

from the sea? This causes big problems for animals in the sea.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

One day, the rabbit asked the tortoise to race to the river. The tortoise knows well that it's very slow, but it said, "All right." So the rabbit began to run very fast. The tortoise crawled along behind him very slowly. On the way, the rabbit thought, "Ha, I'll win very easily. I'll just stop for



30

Step Ahead

(5Ms)

a little rest." So the rabbit stopped and went to sleep. But the tortoise didn't stop, and it slowly passed the sleeping rabbit. So the tortoise arrived at the river first and won the race.

A Choose the correct answer:

- 1. A tortoise is (faster than quicker than slower than as slow as) a rabbit.
- 2. The opposite of the underlined word "won" is (got left ran lost).

B Answer these questions:

- 3. What did the rabbit ask the tortoise to do?
- 4. Why did the tortoise win the race at the end?
- The Reader Granddad's Village
- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (5Ms)
 - Mrs Amira chatted to the boys and showed them all the rooms in the house.
 - 2. Granddad planted an orange tree.
- B Complete the following sentences:
 - 3. Granddad couldn't go on the
 - 4. It's for Grandad to travel because he is in a wheelchair.
- 5 Choose the correct answer: (2Ms)
 - 1. The view from the balcony was (amazing amazed excited interested)!
 - 2. Omar (will would can won't) eat fish for lunch. His mom is cooking chicken.

Unit 8 3. I don't have free time. I (will - can - must - won't) go to the party. 4. (Are - Can - Have - Were) you help us carry these heavy bags? Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)1. be careful - need to - You - animals - wild - with. 2. your - community - in - people - helps - Who? Write an email of (50) words to your friend Ehab: (7Ms) Tell him about your plans for the next summer vacation. Your email address is ziad@school.net, and your friend's email address is ehab@gmail.com. From



Part 2

EXAM

0000

0000

0000

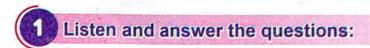
0000

 $1/\sqrt{1/23}$

School Exams

ملحوظة هامة تم تعديل بعض الأسئلة لتتماشى مع آخر تعديلات وزارة التربية والتعليم لهذا العام.

Exam (1) Giza Governorate





نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (61) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. Where did Ali and his family go last week?
- 2. How did Ali's family travel to the city?
- 3. When did Ali and his family arrive?
- 4. What did Ali's cousins show them during the tour?

.....

>

Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:(4Ms)

sports - team - strong - sunscreen - football

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Term 2

Last week, Sama and Habiba went to the wildlife park with their friends. When they arrived, they were very surprised because it was hot in October. They saw a lot of animals and birds. They saw parrots, pandas, kangaroos, lions and penguins. Sama liked the penguins very much.

She thought they were funny with their white and black feathers. Habiba liked pandas a lot. They were huge with thick white fur. They liked how they chewed bamboo plants. They were very happy.

A Choose the correct answer: 1. Sama and Habiba went to the

- Sama and Habiba went to the wildlife park in (September October -November - May).
- 2. The weather was very (cool hot cold windy).
- B Answer these questions:
 - 3. What surprised Sama and Habiba when they arrived at the park?
 - **>**
 - 4. What animals did Sama and Habiba see?
- The Reader "Granddad's Village"
- A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (5Ms)
 - 1. Granddad was a vet. ()
- 2. Fares and Waleed were friends.
- B Complete the following sentences:
- 3. Fares traveled with Waleed's family by train.
- 4. Granddad was on a wheelchair.
- 5 Choose the correct answer: (2Ms)
 - 1. We like (go going goes went) to the beach.
 - 2. They love (watch watching watched watches) adventure films.
 - 3. Football is more interesting (than the this that) tennis.
 - 4. I always eat (something anything anybody everywhere) for breakfast.



	ords in the c		MINISTRAL STEEL SALES OF				,
Did - catch	- you - anythir	ig - today,	- Samy	<i>?</i> 	*II		?
made - And	cient - beautifu	ıl - Eavoti:	ans - hoi	ISES			
							
Write a par	ragraph of (50)	words usi	na the fo	llowing	auidina	elemer	nts:(
	A Market		ı loba.	d plant (est	3		
ldeas to he	AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PERSON		The bea		la con elle		
	family - swi	m - play v	olley bal	ı - nave	iunch		
••••••							
Ex	am (2) Band	lar Dam	anhur A	Admin	stratio	on	70
	am (2) Band Noaz Ibn Gal						
N. A.	Aoaz Ibn Gal	bal Offic	ial Lan				3
	Moaz Ibn Gal	bal Offic	ial Lan	guage	Schoo		3
	Aoaz Ibn Gal	bal Offic	ial Lan	guage	Schoo		(6N
Listen an	Moaz Ibn Gal	bal Offic e questio رفحة (61)	ial Lan ns: موجود م	الاستماع	Schoo انص		3
Listen and What are w	Moaz Ibn Gal nd answer the آخر الكتاب.	e questio (61) مفحة مندة oout the A	ns: מפָּבְפָג מ ncient E	guage الاستماع gyptian	Schoo نص نص s?		3
Listen and What are w	Moaz Ibn Gal nd answer the آخر الكتاب. ve studying ab	e questio (61) مفحة مفحة oout the A	ns: מפجפג מ ncient E	guage الاستماع gyptian	Schoo نص s?		3
What are w	Moaz Ibn Gal nd answer the آخر الكتاب. ve studying ab	e question (61) about the A out Egyptia	ns: מפָּבְפֵּג מ ncient E	guage الاستماع gyptian o travel	Schoo نص s?		3
What are well what way	Aloaz Ibn Gal ad answer the آخر الكتاب. we studying ab did the Ancien	e question (61) acception count the A count Egyptian yptians me	ns: מפּבפנ מ ncient E ns use t	guage Eloïwyll gyptian o travel	schoo نص s?		3
What are well what way	Aoaz Ibn Gal ad answer the آخر الكتاب. ve studying ab did the Ancier	e question (61) acception count the A count Egyptian yptians me	ns: מפּבפנ מ ncient E ns use t	guage Eloïwyll gyptian o travel	schoo نص s?		3

2 Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list: (4Ms)

on - club - where - Why - sport

Tom: Good morning, Sam. We didn't meet on the weekend; where did

you go last Friday?

Sam : Good morning, Tom. I went to the 0 It was fun.

Tom: @ did you go to the club?

Sam: To play basketball. I like it a lot.

Tom: Do you like 9?

Sam : Yes, I do.

Tom: When do you go to the club?

Sam: I go there @ Fridays.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

We should keep our life in a healthy way. It's very important to have healthy habits. It's a good way to enjoy your life. Try to find a healthy balance of play and exercise, healthy food, water, social time, and good sleep. When you put together all these things, you can do your best and achieve everything you want. Put your phone away when you enjoy the outside world with your family and friends. If you have healthy habits, you feel strong, happy and have good relationships. We should learn these things from the early beginning.

A Choose the correct answer:

- (Incorrect Inside Strong Helpful) is the opposite of the underlined word "outside".
- It's best to learn healthy habits from the early (end last beginning top).
- B Answer these questions:
 - 3. How can you enjoy your life?
 - 4. What happens if you have healthy habits?



The Reader "Granddad's Village"	
A Read and write T (True) or F (False):	(5Ms)
 Faris lived in Aswan Granddad always had very helpful things to say 	(
B Complete the following sentences:	× **
3. Granddad always had to tell. 4. Waleed's family moved from	
5 Choose the correct answer:	(2Ms
 Can you (puts - putting - to put - put) up a tent? I think basketball is (the most - less than - the least - more) povolleyball. I hate (travel - traveling - traveled - travels) to cold countries. Who is (tall - taller - the tallest - taller) one in your family? 	pular than
6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:	(1M
1. likes - Mona - sports - school - playing - after.	
2. you - onions - Do - your burger - like - on?	?
Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elen	nents: (7Ms
▶ Ideas to help you: "Your favorite hobby"	17,000
sports - arts and crafts - going on picnics	

पिरम्पा २

38

Exam (3) Menoufia Governorate Education Administration Shebin El-Koum Educational Administration

T	οŧ	ai	ď
)	
	1		
	91		

1 Listen and answer the questions:



(6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (61) آخر الكتاب.

4	\Mhat	did the	Gabi want	to sall?
	· vviial	ulu lile	Gabi Wall	L LU SEII!

TERES NO ANNOUS ENGLANCE LOS DE LOS DESCRIPCIOS DE LA COMPANION DE LA COMPANIO

2. Who said "Give me the sacks of beans"?

TAKA (1976 - 1790) - QUINTERNA - LIBIN (DOLL) EVEN TERRITER (2006) -

3. What surprising thing did the donkey do?

4. Who was watching from a branch?

2 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:(4Ms)

repair - life - happy - worried - village

My dad is a baker, but he is really good at building. Last year, there was heavy rain in our • . It was frightening and lots of people were • . . about their homes. My dad helped to • . . . lots of homes and buildings, to make them safe again. He made • . . . better for our neighbors. Some days I help him, too!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Hi, my name's Seleem. Every year, my family goes camping in the Siwa Oasis in the Western Desert. This year, I recorded a video of our trip for the first time. It's really hot in the desert, so we always put on sunscreen during the day! My little sister likes to help Dad put up the tent... but she can't do it. She's only four! We sometimes go hiking in



the early morning because it's cooler. There are also places where we can go swimming. We always take a lot of water to drink, and we usually have a picnic for lunch. In the evening, we cook dinner on a fire. This is my favorite part of the day. I like looking at the stars in the night sky while Dad tells us stories. It's fun!

- A Choose the correct answer:
 - **1.** Seleem likes (swimming putting up the tent cooking on a fire hiking) in the early morning.
 - 2. They cook dinner in the (morning evening noon afternoon).
- B Answer these questions:
 - 3. Where does Seleem's family go camping every year?
 - 4. Why can't Seleem's sister help Dad put up the tent?
- The Reader "Granddad's Village"
- A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (5Ms)
 - 1. Granddad didn't like to tell Fares about his life. ()
 - 2. Fares lived in Alexandria. (
 - B Complete the following sentences:
 - 3. The tree was Granddad's favorite tree.
- 4. Fares traveled by
- 5 Choose the correct answer: (2Ms)
 - 1. If you have any problem, (asking to ask ask asks) your parents for help.
 - 2. If you (want wants wanted to want) to feel sleepy, read a good book at bedtime.



			271					
Sc	h	0	-	н	5	~	199	•

3. He (shouldn't - should - are - aren't) study more if he wants to pass his exam.4. Can you (makes - making - make - made) some food for the party?
6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)
1. lots - Drink - water - of - to stay - healthy.
2. other - How - help - can - people - you?
7 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)
► Ideas to help you: "Advice for good sleep"
bedtime - shower - big meal - street lights - curtains
ediretes an odii SAA respector tens arusions respective assertantes as a
Exam (4) Ismailia Governorate
1 Listen and answer the questions: (6Ms)
نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (62) آخر الكتاب. ﴿
1. What grade is Amir in?
2. What's Amir's favorite hobby?
3. What is Fares good at?
4. What word hest describes Fares?

2 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:(4Ms)

knee - nature - sick - National - fun

We went to Sharm El-Sheikh on vacation. It was a lot of •
On the last day, we got a boat to visit Ras Muhammed 2
Park. I liked the boat trip, but my little brother Adam felt 6
He had to sit on Mom's 4! When we got to the national
park, we tried snorkeling.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

I'm Amira. I love having free time because I can do my favorite things. For example, my family and I enjoy spending time outside. My mom, dad and I love going hiking in the mountains and the desert. We like going to the beach, too. I love going swimming, but my mom doesn't like swimming and always reads a book at the beach. Sometimes my mom and I record a video at the beach to send to my grandparents.

- A Choose the correct answer:
 - 1. The underlined word "free" is the opposite of (busy empty late hot).
 - Amira and her family enjoy spending their time (inside indoors outside - sleeping).
- B Answer these questions:
 - 3. What is this text about?
 - 4. What does Mom do at the beach?



The Reader

"Granddad's Village"

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):	(5Ms)
1. Fares lived in Alexandria with his parents and his granddad. 2. Granddad was a singer.	()
B Complete the following sentences:	
3. Fares' granddad lived in with his parents. 4. One day, Fares saw a new moving into his buil	lding.
5 Choose the correct answer:	(2Ms)
 We like (go - going - goes - went) to the beach in summer. She (don't - doesn't - hasn't - haven't) like cycling. I'm hungry. Is there (everything - anybody - anything - everybody I went to the cinema to (saw - see - seen - sees) a new film. 	y) to eat?
6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:	(1M)
1. camping - you - Would - like - to - go?	
2. had - with - I - my family - vacation - a nice.	
Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elemen	ts: (7Ms)
Ideas to help you: "Your favorite place"	DELS.
the sports center - village - parks	

Connect Plus 5

43

Exam (5) Kafr Elsheikh Governorate

Total 30

1 Listen and answer the questions:



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (62) آخر الكتاب.

1. Where did Hapi live?	1.	W	here	did	Har	oi li	ve?
-------------------------	----	---	------	-----	-----	-------	-----

2. What did Hapi do every day?

.....

3. Who did Hapi help in the house?

4. What game did Hapi and his sister play?

2 Read and complete the following dialogue with the words from the list:(4Ms)

best - healthy - unhealthy - time - home

Omar: What's your favorite healthy food?

Zyad : I like fish 0

Omar: Why do you like fish?

Zyad: I like it because it's very 2

Omar: What 6 do you usually eat it?

Zyad: I usually eat it on Fridays. **Omar:** Where do you eat it?

Zyad: At a restaurant near my 4

Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)



Amira went to visit her cousins Ali and Mona in Sharm El-Sheikh in the summer. They wanted to show Amira the beautiful mountains near there. So, they decided to take her camping. Uncle Wael drove to the start of the trail, which is a rough path across the desert. The air smelled beautiful and they went hiking into a deep valley. Amira took her phone,

recorded a video and dropped a pin on the map. They finally arrived at the first campsite. Uncle Wael took the tent out of his backpack. Ali tried to put up the tent, but he couldn't remember how to put it up. Mona tried to light the fire, but she couldn't. So they didn't eat and they couldn't sleep in the tent.

,	ALC: N	
//		Choose the correct answer:
ı		Change the correct encurer
		Choose me correct answer
v		

- Amira's cousins wanted to show her the beautiful (rivers mountains farms - gardens).
- 2. Uncle Wael took the tent out of his (box desk closet backpack).

/	APPLICATION AND APPLICATION APPLICATION AND APPLICATION APPLIC	CHARLIST THE STREET STREET, THE STREET STREET, STREET, STREET, STREET, STREET, STREET, STREET, STREET, STREET,
ı		
ı		Answer these questions:
N		Patriother direct description

- 3. Who tried to make the campfire?
- 4. What is the trail?
- The Reader "Granddad's Village"
- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (5Ms)
 - 1. Waleed visited Fares with his mom and dad.
 - 2. Mrs Amira showed the boys all the rooms in the house. (
 - B Complete the following sentences:
 - 3. Granddad planted some small in his garden.
 - 4. Granddad was very to hear about all the buildings.
- 5 Choose the correct answer: (2Ms)
 - 1. If the movie is boring, (don't isn't doesn't didn't) watch it.
 - 2. Children (are must should shouldn't) eat too much candy.



	School Exams
	3. Does Judy like buying new clothes? Yes, she (doesn't - does - do - don't). 4. Ali (loving - don't love - love - loves) making dishes.
	6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)
	1. like - to - Do - music - you - listening?
	2. popular - Many - country - are - sports - my - in.
(Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)
	► Ideas to help you: "My favorite sports and hobbies"
	free time - play football - play music - have a picnic
8	Exam (6) Beheira Governorate Housh Issa Directorate
(1 Listen and answer the questions: (6Ms)
	نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (62) آخر الكتاب.
	1. What is Mohamed's favorite activity?
	2. What's his favorite season?
2	3. Where can weather change very fast?
Term	4. What should Mohamed learn to put up?
المام المام المام	46. Step Ahead

2 Read and complete the following text with the words from	the list:(4Ms)
lake - sun - boat - bushes - fish	
Younis was walking through the date palms near his home. It and the was a bright yellow circle in the sky. I grass and grew next to the path to the Younis saw his grandpa pulling his fishing water. He ran towards his boat to see the fish his grandpa ca was very happy with the fish.	Tall green out of the
3 Read the following text and answer the questions:	(5Ms)
I'm Alex. I live in a city called Brighton. It is in the south of Ena small city and about 200,000 people live there. In Brighton, beach and there are lots of cool stores and restaurants. Lots come to my city to go to the beach. We also have Brighton Pier. many games and rides for children here. We also have a ver house in Brighton. The Upside Down House! It's great fun.	there is a of tourists There are
A Choose the correct answer:	
 Lots of (tourists - divers - bakers - swimmers) come to Brighton Brighton is in the (south - east - west - north) of England. 	n every year.
B Answer these questions:	
3. What does the underlined word "there" refer to?	
4. How many people live in Brighton?	
The Reader "Granddad's Village"	
Read and write T (True) or F (False):	(5Ms)
1. Granddad didn't use to go to the theater a lot.	()

School Exams Complete the following sentences: 3. Waleed and Fares saw the where granddad used to teach. 4. Fares felt of his granddad's work. Choose the correct answer: 1. She doesn't like (watching - watch - watches - watched) TV. 2. Football is (more - most - least - the most) popular than basketball. 3. (Everyone - Everything - Something - Nothing) in the city can see the tower. 4. We go to the sports center (to play - play - playing - plays) football. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)1. eat - meal - a big - Don't - to - close - bedtime. 2. free - do - you - time - How - spend - your? Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms) "My free time" Ideas to help you: do sports - exercise everyday - read - visit grandparents

Term 2

48

→ Step Ahead

Exam (7) Ministry Of Education Diarb Negm Educational Directorate



1 Listen and answer the questions:



(6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (62) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. What do we mean by "Paralympic Games"?
- 2. Who participates in the Paralympic Games?
- 3. How often do the Paralympic Games take place?
- 4. What did many Egyptian Paralympic athletes win?
- Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:(4Ms)

crops - flooded - know - economy - linen

We are talking about natural resources in ancient Egypt. Do you that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? Agriculture was very important to the of ancient Egypt. The Nile of ancient Egypt. The Nile of ancient Egypt and made the soil fertile. Farmers grow lots of different such as cotton and rice. Flax was an important plant in ancient Egypt. People used it to make linen for clothes and strong rope.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Have you ever heard about nocturnal animals? They are amazing animals. They sleep in the day but are awake at night. They hunt for their prey or look for food in the dark. They are different from other animals like camels and donkeys which are awake in the day. Some animals are nocturnal because it's difficult for them to find food in hot weather, so it's better to sleep in the day and come out at night when it's cooler. It can also be



(4)

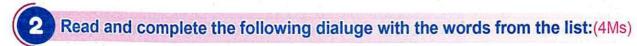
easier for small animals to hide from predators at night. It's safer to come out when it's dark because they can't easily see them. The senses of nocturnal animals are special and developed. They have adapted to working when it's dark. They have a very good sense of hearing to move at night.

A Choose the correct answer:

- The underlined word "come out" gives the opposite of (make disappear - know - visit).
- 2. Nocturnal animals don't look for food during (night the day dawn the evenings).
- B Answer these questions:
 - 3. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?
 - 4. Why do nocturnal animals have strong sense of hearing?
- The Reader "Granddad's Village"
- A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (5Ms)
 - 1. Fares lived with his parents and his granddad in Cairo. ()
 - 2. Granddad always had stories to tell. ()
 - B Complete the following sentences:
 - 3. Granddad said that he played football in a when he was a boy.
 - 4. Fares traveled with Waleed's family by
- 5 Choose the correct answer: (2Ms)
 - 1. If you want to be healthy, (have had having has) enough sleep.
 - 2. Football is (most least the least more) popular than tennis.
 - 3. You shouldn't (drinks drink drinking drank) a lot of soda.
 - 4. Ali is very hungry. Is there (everything anybody anything somebody) for him to eat?



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:	(1
oes - What - Laila - Sara - ask - to do?	2
randma - My - to be - used - a teacher.	
Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elem	nents: (7M
eas to help you: "Healthy habits"	i tima
having healthy food - doing exercises - sleeping early	
The control of the co	- (2-27p) r
tine noticeang lext and one wer the questions *	
ahn sid um teisi. Usu a kuluwa Pengulan andal ilawa a sa tu sa	old.mi)
ra) sheet and de nyaffi, man a tract en éta luitement la pril transcrius	
Exam (8) Sharkia Governorate, Zagazig	▲ Total
Educational Administration	30
Listen and answer the questions:	(6Ms)
نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (62) آخر الكتاب.	VA OFFICE
hat is Osama's favorite place?	SINT IN
/here is it?	
/hen does everybody go to the sports center?	
/hen does everybody go to the sports center? /hat can Osama and his friends do at the sports center?	



October - Friday - online - shopping - clothes

Amir : Do you like shopping?

Ahmed: Yes, I do.

Amir : When do you go • ?

Ahmed: I go shopping on @

Amir : What do you like buying by yourself?

Ahmed: I like buying my 6

Amir : What about o shopping?

Ahmed: I don't like it.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Hi, I'm Nesma. I love going to the park on the weekend. I meet my friends there, and we play games. It's a beautiful place, and everything in the park is clean. Nobody leaves garbage or drops litter. There's always something to see or do. Everybody in my family loves the park, too. Sometimes my mom and I play with my little sister Dalia, and my dad plays football with my brother Waleed.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Nobody drops (flowers letters plants litter) in the park.
- 2. There are (three four five six) people in the family.
- Answer these questions:
 - 3. Where does Nesma love going?
 - 4. What does dad play in the park?





The Reader

"Granddad's Village"

A Read and write T (True) or F (False):	(5Ms)
 Fares moved from Cairo because his mom had a new job. Granddad hasn't visited his village for twenty years. 	()
Complete the following sentences:	
3. Fares lived in with his parents and his granddad. 4. liked to tell Fares about his life when he was a child.	
5 Choose the correct answer:	(2Ms)
 I had to ask (somebody - anybody - everything - something) for directions. Have you got (anything - everything - everybody - nothing) to eat? He took a camera with him (to take - to taking - took - taking) some. There isn't (nobody - somebody - something - anybody) in the classement. 	photos.
6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:	(1M)
1. a red - The children - the train - to stop - flag - used.	
2. anything - need - Do - the mall - from - you - ?	
Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements	:: (7Ms)
▶ Ideas to help you: "The Pyramids"	33538
in Giza - huge - stone - famous - tourists - photos - amazing	
	2

Exam (9) Qalyubia Governorate





Listen and answer the questions:



(6Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (62) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. Where did Amr go on vacation with his family?
- 2. What happened to Amr's sister during the boat trip?
- 3. What did Amr's mom buy at the market?
- 4. Why was Amr happy after visiting the market?
- Read and complete the following text with the words from the list:(4Ms)

best - phones - late - tired - well

Sleep is very important to everybody. When you feel
you should sleep. If you don't sleep
, you feel bad during the day. Sleep helps us study well and do our
at sports. You shouldn't use or put
or tablets close to your bed.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5Ms)

Adam is eleven years old. He lives by the sea. One day, he went to bed at ten o'clock as usual, but he couldn't sleep. He heard his Mom going past his bedroom door. He was wide awake. He wasn't sleepy at all. Mom came into his room and looked outside the window. There was a full moon. The moonlight was shining on the sea. Mom told Adam that the full moon stopped him sleeping. Mom told him that a full moon could change our body clocks. The full moon is very bright, so our body clocks think it's still daytime.



		cnool Exams
2. Adam lives by the (sea - school - river - desert). B	A Choose the correct answer:	
3. How could a full moon change our body clocks? 4. What time did Adam go to bed? 4. The Reader "Granddad's Village" A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (5Ms) 1. Granddad studied hard when he was a boy. () 2. Fares wasn't proud of his granddad's work. () B Complete the following sentences: 3. Fares lived in 4. Granddad can't travel because he is in a 5 Choose the correct answer: (2Ms) 1. She hates (write - writes - to writing - writing) emails on her phone. 2. Everything in this shop (are - is - were - be) made from recycled plastic. 3. Listening to music is (less popular - as popular - popular - the most popular) than playing computer games. 4. If you need information about a subject, (searches - search - searching - searched) on the internet. 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms) 1. usually - put on - I - sunscreen - before - swimming. 2. aren't - people - There - in - many - the countryside.		
4. What time did Adam go to bed? The Reader "Granddad's Village" A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (5Ms) 1. Granddad studied hard when he was a boy. () 2. Fares wasn't proud of his granddad's work. () B Complete the following sentences: 3. Fares lived in	B Answer these questions:	
The Reader "Granddad's Village" 1. Granddad studied hard when he was a boy. 2. Fares wasn't proud of his granddad's work. D Complete the following sentences: 3. Fares lived in 4. Granddad can't travel because he is in a 5. Choose the correct answer: 2. Everything in this shop (are - is - were - be) made from recycled plastic. 3. Listening to music is (less popular - as popular - popular - the most popular) than playing computer games. 4. If you need information about a subject, (searches - search - searching - searched) on the internet. 6. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 3. Listening to music is responsible to the most popular of t	3. How could a full moon change our body clocks?	
A Read and write T (True) or F (False): 1. Granddad studied hard when he was a boy. 2. Fares wasn't proud of his granddad's work. 3. Fares lived in 4. Granddad can't travel because he is in a 5. Choose the correct answer: 1. She hates (write - writes - to writing - writing) emails on her phone. 2. Everything in this shop (are - is - were - be) made from recycled plastic. 3. Listening to music is (less popular - as popular - popular - the most popular) than playing computer games. 4. If you need information about a subject, (searches - search - searching - searched) on the internet. 6. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 1. usually - put on - I - sunscreen - before - swimming. 2. aren't - people - There - in - many - the countryside.	4. What time did Adam go to bed?	
1. Granddad studied hard when he was a boy. 2. Fares wasn't proud of his granddad's work. () B Complete the following sentences: 3. Fares lived in 4. Granddad can't travel because he is in a 5 Choose the correct answer: (2Ms) 1. She hates (write - writes - to writing - writing) emails on her phone. 2. Everything in this shop (are - is - were - be) made from recycled plastic. 3. Listening to music is (less popular - as popular - popular - the most popular) than playing computer games. 4. If you need information about a subject, (searches - search - searching - searched) on the internet. 6. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms) 1. usually - put on - I - sunscreen - before - swimming. 2. aren't - people - There - in - many - the countryside.	The Reader "Granddad's Village"	
2. Fares wasn't proud of his granddad's work. () () () () () () () (A Read and write T (True) or F (False):	(5Ms)
3. Fares lived in	1. Granddad studied hard when he was a boy.	()
 Fares lived in	2. Fares wasn't proud of his granddad's work.	()
 Granddad can't travel because he is in a Choose the correct answer: (2Ms) She hates (write - writes - to writing - writing) emails on her phone. Everything in this shop (are - is - were - be) made from recycled plastic. Listening to music is (less popular - as popular - popular - the most popular) than playing computer games. If you need information about a subject, (searches - search - searching - searched) on the internet. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms) usually - put on - I - sunscreen - before - swimming. aren't - people - There - in - many - the countryside. 	B Complete the following sentences:	
 Choose the correct answer: (2Ms) She hates (write - writes - to writing - writing) emails on her phone. Everything in this shop (are - is - were - be) made from recycled plastic. Listening to music is (less popular - as popular - popular - the most popular) than playing computer games. If you need information about a subject, (searches - search - searching - searched) on the internet. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms) usually - put on - I - sunscreen - before - swimming. aren't - people - There - in - many - the countryside. 	3. Fares lived in	
 She hates (write - writes - to writing - writing) emails on her phone. Everything in this shop (are - is - were - be) made from recycled plastic. Listening to music is (less popular - as popular - popular - the most popular) than playing computer games. If you need information about a subject, (searches - search - searching - searched) on the internet. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms) usually - put on - I - sunscreen - before - swimming. aren't - people - There - in - many - the countryside. 	4. Granddad can't travel because he is in a	ab le Villa
 Everything in this shop (are - is - were - be) made from recycled plastic. Listening to music is (less popular - as popular - popular - the most popular) than playing computer games. If you need information about a subject, (searches - search - searching - searched) on the internet. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms) usually - put on - I - sunscreen - before - swimming. aren't - people - There - in - many - the countryside. 	5 Choose the correct answer:	(2Ms)
1. usually - put on - I - sunscreen - before - swimming. 2. aren't - people - There - in - many - the countryside. (3Ms)	 Everything in this shop (are - is - were - be) made from rec Listening to music is (less popular - as popular - popular - to popular) than playing computer games. If you need information about a subject, (searches - search 	ycled plastic. the most
2. aren't - people - There - in - many - the countryside.	6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentence	s: (3Ms)
2. aren't - people - There - in - many - the countryside.		Te side

► Ideas to help y	ou: "Mu	y favorite sport")	
favorite	- sport - football -	club - friends - twic	ce a week
Ţ			
			10 E
	xam (10) Meno	oufia Governora	te
	The state of the s	onal Administra	
1 Listen and ar	nswer the questi	ons:	(6
	فحة (62) آخر الكتاب	ں الاستماع موجود صد	ച്
1. How old is the	uncle now?		
2. What did the up	ncle do when he v	was vounger?	
>			
3. What does the	uncle do now?		
4. How often do to	ney practice?		
Dood and			erighili (73)
,		g text with the wor	
rep	air - life - happ	y - worried - vil	lage
My dad works as a			
building and almost was heavy rain in			
were 2	about their home	s. My dad helped to) (9
of homes and build	lings to make the bors. Some days		nade 4

3

Read the following text and answer the questions:

(5Ms

While Reem and Talia were playing on the beach, they saw something strange in the sea. And couldn't see what it was. It was a turtle, and a fishing net was around its neck. It couldn't move its head or its flippers and it was in danger. So, Reem's mom quickly phoned an animal rescue charity. Soon, a man and a woman arrived to help the turtle. They were called Adel and Mariam. Adel held the turtle while Mariam cut the fishing net with some scissors. Turtles aren't dangerous animals and they don't bite, so Adel and Mariam weren't in danger. After that, Reem, Talia, and their parents watched the turtle swam away. Before it disappeared, Dad took a photo of that beautiful animal.

1	ACCOUNTS.	Control of the contro				
	A	Choose t	he co	rrect	answe	r:
v		AND SHAPE OF THE PERSON OF THE				

- 1. (A man Two men Two women A man and woman) arrived to help the turtle.
- 2. The underlined word "danger" is the opposite of (charity problem safety happiness).
- B Answer these questions:
 - 3. Why weren't Adel and Mariam in danger?
 - 4. What did Dad take before the turtle disappeared?

4

The Reader

"Granddad's Village"

A	Read and write T (True) or F (False):	(5Ms)
	Control of the state of the sta	einin marge mach (24) le lizitu.	

- 1. Granddad always had very helpful things to say. ()
- 2. Fares and Waleed were brothers. ()
- B Complete the following sentences:
- 3. Granddad used to go to the a lot.
- 4. Granddad planted some in the garden.



chool Exa	ms — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — —	
5 Choos	se the correct answer:	(2Ms)
2. Ali is tal 3. Can you	is (enough - too - as - also) hot to drink. Il enough to (playing - played - play - plays) basketball. If (helps - helping - help - helped) me prepare for the particles - feeling - felt - feel) too hot in bed, open the window	
6 Put the	e words in the correct order to make sentences:	(1M)
1. live - all -	- We - in - community - a.	
	ink - water - of - to keep - healthy - yourself.	to: (7Mc)
	paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding element help you: "Pollution"	is. (7 IVIS)
124	ees - plants - pollution - garbage - people - environment	
·····		····

Exam (11) Menoufia Governorate Shebin El-Koum Directorate



1 Listen and answer the questions:



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (62) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. What does Mazen like to do?
- 2. Where does Mazen live during the summer?
- 3. What languages can Mazen speak?



58

4. Why do tourists like Mazen?	kums
2 Read and complete the following text with the words from the list	(4Ms)
local - milk - fruit - excited - breakfast	
It was my first day of my vacation. I felt so happy and Every day, we got up early and ate honey for market because it was getting late.	ith
3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (5N	1 s)
Water means life. It is very important in our life. We need it for drinking washing, cooking, watering the fields and getting electricity. We should use it carelessly. Many people use it badly. Some of them use too movement to wash their cars. Others leave the taps open, day and night. Children need to know how to use water carefully. Parents and teach have to teach their children that water means our life and how to save was	dn't uch ers
A Choose the correct answer:	
 The text is talking about (pollution - sports - water - electricity). The underlined word "carelessly" is the opposite of (happily - care - lazily - slowly). 	fully
B Answer these questions:	
3. Why do we need water? 4. How do people use water badly?	
The Reader "Granddad's Village"	
A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (5	Ms)
 Fares and Waleed became good friends. Granddad can walk.) [E

Connect Plus 5

School Exams

Choose the correct answer: When you go to bed, you shouldn't (playing - play - plays - to play) games. How (many - much - often - deep) water do you drink a day? What should I (does - did - do - doing) to be healthy? That is the (more - less - most - than) expensive dress in the shop. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: around - goes - The - Earth - the - moon. favorite - sleep - to - What's - place - your? Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:	120			
Granddad worked as Fares gave granddad a photo Choose the correct answer: When you go to bed, you shouldn't (playing - play - plays - to play) games. How (many - much - often - deep) water do you drink a day? What should I (does - did - do - doing) to be healthy? That is the (more - less - most - than) expensive dress in the shop. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: around - goes - The - Earth - the - moon. favorite - sleep - to - What's - place - your? Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: Ideas to help you: "Going camping" Last week - went - friends - hiking - tent - campfire	B Comp	lete the following s	entences:	
Choose the correct answer: When you go to bed, you shouldn't (playing - play - plays - to play) games. How (many - much - often - deep) water do you drink a day? What should I (does - did - do - doing) to be healthy? That is the (more - less - most - than) expensive dress in the shop. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: around - goes - The - Earth - the - moon. favorite - sleep - to - What's - place - your? Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: Ideas to help you: Last week - went - friends - hiking - tent - campfire				
Choose the correct answer: When you go to bed, you shouldn't (playing - play - plays - to play) games. How (many - much - often - deep) water do you drink a day? What should I (does - did - do - doing) to be healthy? That is the (more - less - most - than) expensive dress in the shop. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: around - goes - The - Earth - the - moon. favorite - sleep - to - What's - place - your? Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: Ideas to help you: Last week - went - friends - hiking - tent - campfire		Υ		
games. How (many - much - often - deep) water do you drink a day? What should I (does - did - do - doing) to be healthy? That is the (more - less - most - than) expensive dress in the shop. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: around - goes - The - Earth - the - moon. favorite - sleep - to - What's - place - your? Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: Ideas to help you: Last week - went - friends - hiking - tent - campfire	THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN 1			
Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: around - goes - The - Earth - the - moon. favorite - sleep - to - What's - place - your? Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: Ideas to help you: Last week - went - friends - hiking - tent - campfire		u go to bed, you sho	ouldn't (playing - play - plays -	to play)
3. What should I (does - did - do - doing) to be healthy? 4. That is the (more - less - most - than) expensive dress in the shop. 5. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 6. around - goes - The - Earth - the - moon. 7. Favorite - sleep - to - What's - place - your? 8. Your the words in the correct order to make sentences: 9. Around - goes - The - Earth - the - moon.	2. How (ma	ny - much - often - de	eep) water do you drink a day?	?
Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: around - goes - The - Earth - the - moon. favorite - sleep - to - What's - place - your? Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: Ideas to help you: Last week - went - friends - hiking - tent - campfire	3. What sh	ould I (does - did - do	- doing) to be healthy?	
Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: around - goes - The - Earth - the - moon. favorite - sleep - to - What's - place - your? ? Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: Ideas to help you: Last week - went - friends - hiking - tent - campfire				e shop.
around - goes - The - Earth - the - moon. 2. favorite - sleep - to - What's - place - your? ? Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: Ideas to help you: Last week - went - friends - hiking - tent - campfire				
Last week - went - friends - hiking - tent - campfire	Write a	paragraph of (50) word	ds using the following guiding e	? elements:
		The second secon		·е
	,	=======================================		
The state of the s		*	_ CO, 12 8	
				17 210 - 1

Term 2

Listening Scripts Unit 6 **Listening Scripts**

My name is Sara. My favorite hobby is birdwatching, which is when you watch birds in their natural environment. My dad is a tour guide, and he takes people to see birds on the river. He's taught me all about the different birds, too. I know where they live and what they eat.



Amira went to Sharm El-Sheikh on vacation. It was a lot of fun! On the last day, she got a boat to visit Ras Muhammed National Park. She liked the boat trip, but her little brother Adam felt sick. When they got to the national park, they tried snorkeling. It was amazing!

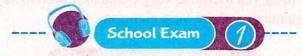


If you want to feel sleepy, read a good book at bedtime. Don't go to bed too late - around 10 pm is great. Your bedroom should be dark when you sleep. If the street lights are bright outside your room, make sure you have good curtains. Also, don't listen to loud music in bed.



Reem and Talia were playing on the beach with their parents. Suddenly, Reem saw something strange in the sea. The two girls walked slowly to the strange object. It looked like a fishing net, but they could also see a small head, and something hard. It was a

shell! It was a turtle! It was stuck in the net and it was frightened! They called a charity which rescues turtles and saved the turtle.



Last week, Ali went with his family to visit his cousins. Ali's dad drove the car to the city. They arrived in the evening. When they arrived; Ali's cousins were very happy to see them. They had dinner and slept. On the next day, Ali's cousins took them to a tour in the city and they showed them beautiful museums. They had lunch at a nice restaurant and went back to their house. They were very happy.



Egypt is full of history. We are studying the Ancient Egyptians history at school. We found out that people didn't travel over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for transportation. They moved their goods in different kinds of boats and ships. People also traveled up and down the river. The Ancient Egyptians were active and clever.



In a quaint village, Gabi the villager set out to sell his prized beans. As he loaded the sack onto his trusty donkey, the animal suddenly said, "Give me the beans sack!" Startled, Gabi had no idea his donkey could fly. Just then, an ibis perched on a branch overhead watched with curious eyes. With a mighty leap, the donkey soared into the sky, leaving Gabi and his beans far below, dreaming of new adventures.

Listening Scripts



Amir is in grade five. Traveling is his favorite hobby. He enjoys traveling to new places. Fares, his friend, is very creative. Fares likes painting and drawing pictures.



Hapi lived in ancient Egypt. He lived with his parents on a farm near the Nile. Every day, he helped his father look after his animals. After work, he and his sister helped his mother in the house. When they finished the housework, they sometimes played a board game called Senet.



Hello. I'm Mohamed. I'm in grade 5, and camping is my favorite activity. I like summer because I go camping a lot in summer. But in Egypt, in the mountainous areas, the weather can change very fast. So it's very important to learn how to put up a tent. I feel happy when I camp in the mountains.



The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. The Paralympic Games take place every four years. Many Egyptian Paralympic athletes won many gold, silver, and bronze medals.



Hi, I am Osama. My favorite place is the sports center. The sports center is in our city. Everybody goes to the sports center on Friday night. We can meet all our friends there, and we can have fun and do whatever we want.



Amr was excited to go to Cairo on vacation with his family. His sister felt sick on their boat trip. While Amr sat on the boat, he watched the waves splash. Later, they visited the market where Mom bought five big fish. Amr was happy because he likes fish. Together, they laughed and enjoyed their time, making wonderful memories.



I have an uncle. He is about 50 years old now. He used to be really good at football when he was younger. He doesn't play football anymore, but he teaches the local children: I love playing on his team. We practice once or twice a week and we play games against other teams. It's tiring, but it's great fun.



Mazen likes traveling with his family. He lives on a ship in the summer. Mazen and his family travel up and down the Nile. Mazen speaks with tourists. He can speak English and French better. Tourists like Mazen because he is very kind and brave.

Part

AMSTYPE Key



Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

Read and complete the text:

1- popular 2- play 3- put on 4- make

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- free time 2- do 3- craft 4- record

Read and answer:

1- hiking 2- evening

3- They go camping in the Siwa Oasis.

4- She is only four.

4 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Football is the most popular sport.

2- We go camping in the summer.

3- Do you do arts and crafts?

4- What free-time activity do you like?

Complete the email:

1- go 2- put up 3- go 4- put on 5- have 6- make 7- go 8- record

6 Write a paragraph:

"How do I spend my free time?"

I spend my free time doing different things. I play football most of the time. My sister has taught me how to do some arts and crafts, so I like origami. Sometimes we have a picnic in a public park near our house. And last winter, I went camping with my friends in Wadi Degla. I enjoy my hobbies a lot.

Lesson (2)

1 Read and complete the text:

1- hates 2- enjoys 3- reading 4- watching

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- spending

2- mountains

3- beach

4- picnic

3 Choose the correct answer:

1- having 2- spending 3- going

4- swimming 5- staying 6- going

7- doing 8- having 9- eating

10-spending 11-putting 12-going

2 Put the words in the correct order:

1- We love camping in the desert.

2- We are almost the same age.

3- Do they like watching our adventures?

4- I enjoy spending time with my family.

S Write an email:

From: samar@yahoo.com

To: magda@hotmail.com

Subject: What I like and don't like doing

Hi Magda,

I hope you are doing well. I want to tell you some of the things I like or don't like doing. I like playing football and watching football matches. I also like playing video games and playing with my friends in the park. On the other hand, I don't like playing basketball. I also don't like eating unhealthy food. See you soon. Samar

Lessons (3-4)

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- hobby 2- painting 3- games 4- free

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- older 2- smaller than 3- fastest

4- most 5- more 6- the 7- taller

8- the shortest 9- the most exciting

10- the least 11- more 12-the least relaxing

13- the least 14- less 15- more dangerous

16- most 17- less 18- less expensive

19- less interesting 20- the most interesting

21- more difficult 22- more exciting

3 Put the words in the correct order:

1- What sports do you like doing?

2- Swimming is the most popular activity.

3- When do you read poems, Fares?

4- He loves making delicious dishes and watching TV.

Read and answer:

1- Swimming

2- sports

3- The most popular sport in the world is football. 4- There are some dangerous sports like motor racing, and parachuting which is played in the air.

Lesson (5)

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- race 2- Pharaoh 3- wrestling 4- boats

Read and answer:

1- village 2- famous

- 4- Senet was a very popular game in Ancient Egypt.
- 5- Every day, he helped his father look after his animals. After work, he and his sister Amunet helped his mother in the house. When they finished the housework, they sometimes played a board game called Senet.

3 Put the words in the correct order:

- Hapi lived with his parents in Ancient Egypt.
- 2- Where did Hapi go with his father?
- 3- Children in Ancient Egypt enjoyed playing games.
- 4- Who did Hapi meet in the story?

4 Circle T or F and correct the false:

1-(T) 2- (F) They had toys as well. 3- (T) 4- (F) They often swam in the Nile. 5- (T)

Lesson (6)

Read and complete:

- 1- birdwatching 2- environment 3- guide
- 4- gorgeous

2 Read the email and answer:

- 1- He's writing to Jamie.
- 2- He lives in Alexandria, in Egypt.
- 3- His favorite hobby is wildlife photography.
- 4- He has about 300 wildlife photos.
- 5- His favorite animal is the fennec fox.
- 6- The Siwa Oasis is an awesome place to see wildlife.

3 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Have you ever been to Egypt?
- 2-There are lots of wonderful animals in Egypt.
- 3- I often go hiking with my parents.
- 4- There are so many gorgeous birds.
- 5- My favorite hobby is photography.
- 6- My dad is a tour guide.

Write an email:

From: ahmad@yahoo.com
To: john@hotmail.com

Subject: My hobbies

Hi John,

Hello. I'm your new email friend. I'm ten years old and I live in Alexandria, in Egypt. Have you ever been to Egypt? It's a really interesting and beautiful country. My favorite hobby is wildlife photography.

Wildlife photography is when you take pictures of animals, birds, and plants in nature. There are lots of wonderful animals in Egypt. I really love taking photos of them and learning about them. My favorite animals are lions. They're gorgeous. I love hiking, too. The Siwa Oasis is an awesome place to see wildlife. I often go hiking with my parents. Tell me about your hobbies. Write soon!

Bye for now, Ahmad

Lesson (7)

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- camping 2- trail 3- valley 4- tent

Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Who is going to make the campfire?
- 2- We can read the map together.
- 3- How can we find the car, Ali?
- 4- They all worked together to prepare dinner.
- 5- They arrived at the campsite first.

Write a paragraph: "A trip to a village"

I remember the trip with my family to a village in Aswan last summer. It was a very beautiful place with bright colors. The people there were very nice, and the food was very special. We had dinner on a boat on the Nile. The air was fresh, and the weather was amazing. I can't wait to visit

that village again!
Unit (5) Test (1)

1 Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- They have picnics.
- 2- There are a lot of green spaces in my city.
- 3- The only problem is that it rains a lot.
- 4- She goes swimming. The pool is in doors.

Read and complete the text:

- 1- cousin 2- enjoy 3- age 4- games
- 3 Read and answer:
- 1- watching TV 2- different
- 3- People's Hobbies 4- To know what is happening all over the world.



- Choose the correct answer:
- 1- more 2- traveling 3- go
- 4- the least exciting
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- What free-time activities do these children like?
- 2- They played a board game called senet.
- Write a text of 50 words: "Going camping"

I went camping with my family last weekend in Saint Catherine in South Sinai. It's an amazing place and the mountains are very high. We set up our tents and cooked some meat and vegetables on the campfire. We went hiking after that, and I was very tired, but I enjoyed it very much. It was an awesome experience.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- harbor 2- trip 3- Citadel 4- fort
- 2 Read and complete the dialogue:
- 1- Library 2- harbor 3- books
- 4- planetarium
- 3 Read and answer:
- 1- primary school 2- Nesma's cousin
- 3- She is studying science.
- 4- The university buildings are very big, much bigger than school.
- 4 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1) What do you know about Alexandria?
- 2) Alexandria has a very important harbor.
- 3) How did Nesma travel around Alexandria?
- 4) There are bike paths in the city.
- 5) What did they see in the planetarium?
- S Write a paragraph:

"A visit to Alexandria"

Last summer, I went with my family to Alexandria by train. We went to the beach in the morning, and we swam in the sea. In the afternoon, we went to the Alexandria Library, and it was amazing. We also did some shopping, and my father bought new shoes for me. We all enjoyed this great city.

Lesson (2)

- 1 Read and complete the text:
- 1- everything 2- Nobody 3- something
- 4- Everybody
- 2 Complete the dialogue:
- 1- anything 2- anybody 3- everything
- 4- everybody 5- everything
- 3 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- anything / 2- somebody 3- everybody 4- anybody
- 5- Everything 6- something
- 7- somebody 8- something
- 9- anything 10- Nobody 11- Everybody 12- nothing
- 13- anybody 14- everything 15- is
- 4 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Everybody learns about the stars at the planetarium.
- 2- What's your favorite place, Magdy?
- 3- The cakes are really good here.
- 4- My house is near the beach.
- 5- There is somebody at the door.
- 6- It's fun to visit a place.
- 7- My favorite place is the café.

Lesson (3)

- 1 Read and complete the text:
- 1- walls 2- stone 3- towers 4- fort
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- to learn 2- will be 3- the most 4- to build
- 3 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- What can you see in the photo?
- 2- Burj Khalifa has lots of glass windows.
- 3- This building has lots of arches.
- 6- It's made of glass and steel.
- Write an email:

From: adel@hotmail.com

To: sherif@school.net

Subject: My city

Dear friend.

I can't wait to see you in my town. What activities will you enjoy doing together? I can suggest some things to do. I think we can enjoy going to the club and playing



tennis. We also have an amazing mall here, and we can go shopping. And my mother will prepare a delicious dinner for us when we go back.

See you soon Adel

Lesson (4)

Omplete the dialogue:

1- designs 2- stores 3- shopping 4- rooftop

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- to make 2- to watch 3- buy 4- to

5- to ask 6- meet 7- to be 8- to

9-learn 10- to see 11- to make 12- keep

3 Circle T or F and correct the false:

1- (F) There will soon be a new shopping mall in the city. 2- (T)

3- (F) There'll be restaurants and cafés.

4- (T) 5- (T)

6- (F) The plants will make it cool.

4 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Do you like my new house?

2- I am looking at the designs.

3- Can I buy some new clothes?

4- Plants are good for the environment.

5- When will the new mall open?

6- Why do people go to the beach?

7- He is in the living room.

8- What will be in the mall?

9- We are planting lots of plants.

10-It will take about a year to build.

Lesson (5)

Read and complete the text:

1- bright 2- bushes 3- lake 4- boat

Read the text and answer:

1- whale fossil 2- museum

3- It is a beautiful curved building in the desert near Fayoum.

4- It is 37 million years old.

3 Put the words in the correct order:

1- The sun was bright in the sky.

2- We can have fish for dinner.

3- We can grow many things in the oasis.

4- I'd love to live by the sea.

5- What do you see in the desert?

Write a paragraph:

"The desert"

The desert is a big place with lots of sand. It's really hot and dry there. I saw sand dunes that were as tall as mountains! But guess what? In the middle of the desert, there was an oasis. It had beautiful date palms and bushes. It was like a magical place with water and shade. I loved exploring the desert and finding hidden treasures!

Lesson (6)

Read and complete the text:

1- vacation 2- trip 3- masks 4- snorkel

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- vacation

2- National Park

3- snorkeling

4- bright

3 Read and answer:

- 1- fish 2- figs 3- It was in Hurghada.
- 4- They looked at the pretty blue fishing boats.

4 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- What did they see in the water?
- 2- We wore masks over our faces.
- 3- We saw beautiful, tall sea plants.

Write a description:

"A visit to a market"

I went to the market in downtown yesterday afternoon. It was a big place, with different stores selling almost everything! I bought a new amazing blue case for my tablet, and my father got a new pair of shoes. The place was loud and crowded, but I enjoyed it.

Lesson (7)

1 Read and complete the text:

1- country

2- countryside

3- railway

4- house

Put the words in the correct order:

1) They lived in a large house.

- 2) We moved to a smaller house in England.
- 3) The children loved watching the trains.
- 4) They ran back along the railway.

Term 2

Write a paragraph:

"Living in the countryside"

Living in the countryside is so cool! It's really quiet and peaceful here. I love hearing the birds singing and the wind moving through the trees' leaves. There are big open fields where I can run and play. People in the countryside are friendly and kind. The air is fresh and clean, and I feel so healthy and happy living here.

Unit (6) Test (2)

Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- She was in Alexandria last June.
- 2- She went to the aquarium.
- 3- She liked seeing the colorful fish and sea animals in the aquarium.
- 4- She learned a lot about fish in the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea.

Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1- architects
- 2- stores
- 3- cool
- 4- movie theater

Read and answer:

- 1- desert
- 2- fields
- 3- We can go there by car, by bus or by train. 5- It is called Lake.
- Choose the correct answer:
- 1- anything 2- make 3- anybody 4- nothing

6 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- What did they see in the planetarium?
- 2- The countryside is a good place to live.

Write an email:

From: fady@school.com

To: jack@gmail.com

Subject: Tourism in Egypt

Dear Jack,

I hope you and your family are fine. I wanted to tell you about the amazing places to visit in Egypt, such as the great Pyramids of Giza and the Karnak Temple in Luxor. There are also different places in great old cities like Alexandria and Islamic Cairo. Tourists come every year to see the amazing monuments here and there, to try our local cuisine, and to enjoy our weather. Best wishes

Fady

Review (3) Test (3)

Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- Lara and her family are on vacation near the Red Sea in Dahab.
- 2- They always go camping in the summer.
- 3- Lara usually helps her dad to put up the tent.
- 4- Lara's mom takes all their favorite food.

Read and complete the text:

1- aquarium 2- paths 3- theater 4- Citadel

Read and answer:

- 1- dirty 2- football
- 3- She loves going to the park. 4- It's a beautiful place and everything is clean.

Choose the correct answer:

1- the most 2- less 3- to learn 4- anything

6 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- The Grand Egyptian Museum is in Giza.
- 2- Where did Amira go camping yesterday?

Write a paragraph:

My Trip to Al-Fayoum

Last week was a holiday; my family decided to go to Al- Fayoum. El Fayoum is a town near the desert. It is in a big oasis. We went there by car. We saw many fields with canals, and farmers grow many things there. North of the town, there is a big lake. It's Lake Qarun. The town is famous for its big waterwheels. We took lovely pictures and enjoyed a lot. I want to go there one more time.

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

Read and complete the text:

1- Earth 2- moon 3- clocks 4- gravity

Complete the story summary:

- 1- awake 2- mom 3- bright 4- full
- 5- moonlight 6- moon 7- body clocks
- 8- darkness 9- sleepy

3 Complete the sentences:

- 1- sleepy 2- darkness 3- wide awake
- 4- moonlight 5- bright 6- full 7- body clock

- 4 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Why does the full moon stop me sleeping?
- 2- Put the curtain across the window.
- 3- He fell asleep within ten minutes.
- 4- What helps you get to sleep?
- S Write an email:

From: amr@yahoo.com

To: hazem@gmail.com

Subject: Sleep Dear Hazem,

I want to talk to you about sleep. Sleep is very important for a healthy life! Before bed, I brush my teeth, wear pajamas, and read a book with my mom. Then I play with my favorite teddy bear and close my eyes. I try to sleep for about 10 hours every night. When I wake up, I feel refreshed and ready to play. Sleeping helps me grow and have lots of energy during the day! Best wishes

Amr

Lesson (2)

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- sleepy 2- bath 3- shouldn't 4- should
- 2 Read and complete the dialogue:
- 1- tips 2- bedtime 3- tablets 4- relax
- 3 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- Try 2- Don't 3- eat 4- shouldn't
- 5- should 6- shouldn't 7- should 8- sit
- 9- help 10- will 11- feel 12- doesn't eat
- 13- won't 14- has 15- doesn't wake
- 16- won't be 17- were 18- would
- 4 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Don't listen to loud music in bed.
- 2- Do you read books at bedtime?
- 3- I always have a shower in the morning.
- 4- Don't go to bed too late.

Lesson (3)

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- balance 2- social 3- achieve 4- habits
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- play 2- day 3- night 4- fun 5- enjoy 6- boy
- 3 Read and answer:
- 1- happy 2- unhealthy

- 3- They had time to play.
- 4- There houses were small.
- 4 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Do you have a healthy balance in your life?
- 2- What time do you go to bed?
- 3- You should drink water every day.
- 4- We should sleep for eight hours a night.

S Write a paragraph:

"The rules for a healthy life"

It's important to have balance in your life. You should exercise for one hour per day. You should eat healthy foods like vegetables and fruits. Avoid unhealthy fast food and too many sweets. Spending some time with friends and family is important for your happiness. And try to avoid using phones too much. Don't use electronic devices at bedtime.

Lesson (4)

- Read and complete the dialogue:
- 1- dangerous 2- patient 3- advice 4- too
- 2 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- old enough 2- too 3- heavy
- 4- enough 5- patient enough
- 6- too 7- enough 8- strong
- 9- enough 10- too 11- strong enough
- 12- too expensive 13- enough 14- enough
- 3 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Would you like to go swimming?
- 2- The water is deep and dangerous.
- 3- Ibrahim jumps and hurts his foot.
- 4- What would we do without friends?

Lesson (5)

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- Earth 2- gravity 3- high 4- tides
- 2 Read and answer:
- 1- moon 2- moon
- 3- There are two high tides.
- 4- The moon's gravity pulls the Earth away from the water, so we get another high tide.
- 3 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Why was the family frightened on the rocks?
- 2- I live with my family near the sea.



- 3- We like walking along the coast.
- 4- What causes the tides?
- 5- The moon moves around the Earth.
- 6- I heard someone shouting from the beach.
- 7- We ran down to the beach.

Lesson (6)

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- curtains 2- loose 3- comfortable 4- air
- Choose the correct answer:
- 1- so that 2- to 3- so that 4- so that
- 5- to 6- so that 7- so that 8- stay
- 9- your feet will feel 10- so that
- 11- get 12- you won't be
- 3 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- The sun makes the rooms hot.
- 2- Wear loose clothes to feel comfortable.
- 3- Why can hiking sometimes be dangerous?
- 4- Wear sunglasses to protect your eyes.
- Write an information leaflet:

Staying safe when you go swimming Skin safety:

Don't forget to put on sunscreen to protect your skin against sun rays.

Body safety:

Don't jump into shallow waters. And don't go to deep areas unless you can swim well.

Safety in the sea:

Don't go far into water unless you are a professional swimmer. And stay with friends or family in order not to get lost. Finally understand the tides well.

Lesson (7)

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- looked 2- powerful 3- throne 4- obey
- 2 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- King Canute was the King of England.
- 2- King Canute was a very fair king.
- 3- You are the most powerful man on Earth.
- 4- Did you agree with the king?

3 Write an email:

He asked his servants to put his throne near the edge of the sea and he sat down. "Don't move, sea!" he shouted. He wanted to teach his officers a lesson.

He waited until the tide came in. First, it wet his feet and then his clothes. His officers were very surprised, but they said nothing.

Finally, King Canute stood up. "You see," he said. "There is no man who can stop the tides. Nothing is more powerful than nature!"

Unit (7) Test (3)

Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- Two things cause the tide.
- 2- The moon moves around the Earth.
- 3- The moon gravity pulls the water on Earth.
- 4- This causes a high tide in the water nearest the moon.
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- sleepy 2- muscles 3- phones 4- meal
- 3 Read and answer:
- 1- carbohydrates 2- healthy
- 4- It refers to "vitamins".
- 5- Proteins make our bones and teeth strong.
- Choose the correct answer:
- 1- too 2- sleeps 3- intelligent enough 4- go
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- King Canute was the king of England,
- 2- What should you do to keep cool?
- Write a paragraph:

"Reading"

Reading is very important for all people of all ages. The book is your best friend because it can give you useful information and keep you happy. You can spend your time in a useful and fun way with all types of books! So I advise you to go to the library from time to time and enjoy reading the different books there.

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- community 2- volunteer 3- skills 4- neighborhood
- 4- Heighborhood
- Read and complete the text:
- 1-needs 2- excited 3- frightening 4- worried



3 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- garbage

2- beautiful

3- special sticks

4- hours

4 Put the words in the correct order:

1- We all live in a community.

2- Have you ever wanted to be a volunteer?

3- I decided to pick up garbage with my cousins.

4- The park looked amazing.

5- My grandma used to be a teacher.

6- How can you help other people?

S Write a paragraph:

"Helping our community"

My parents taught me the importance of being a positive part of my community. I go with my friends every weekend to clean our community parks, and we try to plant trees in the surrounding areas. We sometimes help with collecting used clothes and prepare hot meals for those who need them. It feels great to be able to help your community!

Lesson (2)

1 Read and choose:

1- Can you help 2- I'll boil 3- I'll cut up

4- I'll make 5- I won't eat 6- I'll share 7- Will you get 8- I'll put 9- I'll get

2 Complete the conversation:

1- will 2- put 3- I'll 4- get

5- won't 6- Will 7- do

3 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Can I borrow your bike, please?

2- I will help you tomorrow.

3- Will you ask your mom if we can go to the club?

4- I'll help you clean the kitchen.

5- The rain water damaged the library yesterday.

6- Can you make food for the party?

7- Will you help me with my project?

8- Can you please help me, Lara?

9- Will you get some bottles of water?

10- I will get the picnic blanket.

Lesson (3)

Read and complete the text:

1- planet 2- devices 3- raising

4- equipment

2 Read and answer:

1- paper 2- trash

3- As it keeps the environment clean and saves materials and money.

4- They sort out trash into piles of plastic, tins, glass, cardboard, paper, and so on.

3 Put the words in the correct order:

1- You can save money and help the planet.

2- What do you hear at a concert?

3-We have volunteers from the community.

4- We are ready to help you.

5- We can repair electronic devices.

6- Will you get some juice and water?

4 Write an email:

From: hany@yahoo.com

To: hazem@gamil.com

Subject: Invitation to the Repair Day

Dear Hazem,

I hope you and your family are fine. I'm writing to you to invite you to join us on the Repair Day. It is an event to save the planet and save money as well. Instead of throwing away broken equipment and electronics, we try to fix them, recycle them, and sell them. It's a way of helping our community as well. I'm waiting for your reply.

See you soon, Hany

Lesson (4)

Omplete the summary:

1- strange 2- fishing net 3- flippers

4- bite 5- disappeared

Read the text and answer:

1- boats 2- at night

3- They are looking for volunteers.

4- Volunteers need to work at night on the beaches to protect turtles when they are laying their eggs.

3 Put the words in the correct order:

1- They were playing on the beach.

2- She saw a strange thing in the sea.

3- We've found a turtle on the beach.4- You need to be careful with wild animals.

5- There was a small café on the beach.

6- The turtle was in shallow water.



Write a paragraph:

"Birds"

I like birds so much. They are always nice to watch, and they make me feel happy when they fly together. When they sing, they have a sweet voice, and when many of them live in a tree, you can feel that the tree is alive! They build their nests, then go and look for food to feed their young in their mouths. They are very nice.

Lesson (5)

Read and complete the text:

1- nocturnal 2- day 3- night 4- predators

Read and complete the text:

1- pollution 2- artificial 3- darkness 4- prey

Read and answer:

1- wet 2- small

3- Dorcas gazelles live in and near the hot dry deserts of North Africa.

4- Dorcas gazelles do not need to drink water because they get all the water they need from their food.

Put the words in the correct order:

1- What problems do nocturnal animals

2- The fennec fox is a nocturnal animal.

3- Donkeys and camels are diurnal animals.

4- Nocturnal animals have a very good sense of hearing.

5- There is often light pollution in cities.

Lesson (6)

Read and complete the text:

1- know 2- plants 3- air

4- environments 5- carbon dioxide

6- green 7- cleaner 8- urban

Complete the information:

1- introduction 2- topic

3- questions

4- answer 5- explain

Read and complete the text:

1- rural

2- concrete

3- absorb 4- environment

4 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Plastic pollution causes big problems in

2- Concrete and buildings can absorb heat.

3- We need to stop plastic pollution.

4- There are lots of lights in the cities.

5- I have researched what causes plastic pollution.

6- Urban areas are often hotter than rural

Lesson (7)

Read and complete the text:

1- lights

2- turn off

3- birds

4- environment

Put the words in the correct order:

1- The lights are strong and bright.

2- All the birds sang loudly yesterday.

3- The birds were not tired any more.

Unit (8) Test (4)

Listen and answer the questions:

1- Nocturnal animals sleep in the day.

2- They hunt for their prey or look for food when it is dark.

3- They are awake in the day.

4- Donkeys are diurnal.

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- damaged 2- practice 3- late 4- free

Read and answer:

1- plants

2- hills

4- It refers to desert animals

5- It is usually very hot and dry.

Choose the correct answer:

1- Can 2- exciting 3- come 4- annoyed

Put the words in the correct order:

1- Plastic causes problems for big animals.

2- How do you help your community?

Write a text of 50 words:

"Pollution"

Pollution is a big problem for our environment. Light pollution is harmful to nocturnal animals and to birds. Plastic pollution is deadly to sea animals, and it's also harmful to humans. Air pollution is very bad for our breathing and driving. Water pollution affects humans, animals, and plants. We should work together to decrease pollution and save environment.



Review (4) Test (6)

1 Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- This is very bad for fish and sea animals.
- 2- When people put garbage into a canal or river, it often goes into the sea.
- 3- Clean the canals in our neighborhood.
- 4- We can use plastic bags and special nets to collect the garbage.

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- Can 2- photos 3- online 4- poster

3 Read and answer:

- 1- desert 2- active
- 4- Body Clocks of Animals
- 5- If there isn't enough light to see, they use hearing and smell to find food.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- wear 2- come 3- too 4- boring

6 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- She has found a turtle in the sea.
- 2- How does pollution affect your environment?

Write a text of 50 words:

"My Favorite Animal"

My favorite pet animal is a cat! Cats are playful and naughty. They love to run after toys and know about their homes. I enjoy watching my cat play and sleep in nice places at home. Cats can be very kind. They make great friends and always makes my day beautiful!

Part Final Revision

Revision Unit (5)

Read and complete the text:

1- camping 2- tent 3- skiing 4- time

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- trail 2- record 3- put up 4- campfire

3 Read and complete the text:

1- pictures 2- nature 3- taking 4- foxes

4 Choose the correct answwer:

1-staying 2- having 3- playing
4- drinking 5- doing 6- swimming
7- writing 8- putting 9- doing 10- having

Choose the correct answwer:

1-younger 2- biggest 3- more

4- the most 5- less expensive

6- more 7- the least 8- less dangerous

9- most 10- more exciting

6 Choose the correct answer:

- 1-The most popular sport is football.
- 2- My favorite hobby is wildlife photography.
- 3- We go camping in the summer.
- 4- Swimming is the most popular activity.
- 5- I enjoy spending time with my family.
- 6- We go skiing in the winter.
- 7- Cooking is the least popular activity.
- 8- What free-time activity do you like?
- 9- Mona likes playing sports after school.
- 10- Do you do crafts and arts?
- 5- I don't have a lot of free time.
- 6- Our father takes us to dinner in weekends.
- 7- Do you post your videos online?
- 8- My older brother enjoys staying at home.

Write a paragraph: "Doing arts and crafts"

The hobby of doing arts and crafts is really interesting. I usually do it when I have free time. I sometimes do it with my sister. She's really talented in making shapes. We make lots of different shapes. We make shapes of animals, birds, insects, trees, flowers and plants. We sometimes make shapes of buildings. We enjoy this hobby a lot.

Unit (5) Test (1)

1 Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- Her favorite hobby is birdwatching.
- 2- Her dad is a tour guide.
- 3- He takes people to see birds on the river.
- 4- He taught her all about different birds.

Read and complete the dialogue:

1-spend 2- weather 3- go 4- cold

3 Read and answer:

- 1- Japan 2- difficult
- 3- It refers to the children. 4- He can do this because his camera is automatic.



Choose the correct answer:

1- less difficult 2- fastest 3- making

4- the most

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1) We watch birds in their natural environment.

2) What sports do you like doing?

Write an email:

From: lamar@yahoo.com

To: maha@hotmail.com

Subject: Spending free time

Dear Maha,

Hello, Lamar. How are you and your family? I'm writing to tell you how my family and I spend our free time. Dad likes reading. He always reads books in his free time. Mom likes watching TV. My brother Ahmed likes going cycling. He has a very nice bike. For me, I like painting. That's all. Please write to me and tell me what you and your family do in your free time.

See you soon

Lamar

Revision Unit (6)

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- aquarium 2- sea animals

3- ruins 4- shows

2 Read and complete the text:

1- Somebody 2- everything

3- something 4- everybody

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- Tower 2- Temple 3- statues 4- Opera

Read and complete the text:

1- harbor 2- books

3- planetarium 4- planets

S Read and complete the text:

1- nobody 2- anybody 3-anything 4-nothing

6 Choose the correct answer:

1- anything 2- anybody 3- everything

4- Everybody 5- something 6- Everything

7- Nobody 8- something 9- Everybody

10- something 11- is 12- wants

Read and complete the text:

1-to 2- to 3- buy 4- meet

5- help 6- ask 7 -get 8- keep

8 Put the words in the correct order:

1) This modern building is made of steel.

2) Alexandria has a very important harbor.

3) What did they see in the planetarium?

4) Everything is old and important at the museum. Or

4) Everything at the museum is old and important.

5) We visited the Citadel of Qaitbay.

6) My favorite place is the sports center.

7) How did Nesma travel around Alexandria?

8) You can rent bikes to travel around.

9) What can you see in the photo?

10) Nothing is old in this tall building.

Write an email:

From: amr@yahoo.com

To: bell@gmail.com

Subject: My visit to the Egyptian Museum Dear Bell.

Hello, Bell. How are you and your family? I'm writing to tell you about a visit I've made to the Egyptian Museum. I went there last week. I went with my friends. We went by bus. The Egyptian Museum is in Tahrir Square in Cairo. We saw lots of ancient monuments and artifacts. I liked the huge statues the best. We met lots of tourists there and took lots of photos. That's all. Please write to me and tell me your news.

See you soon

Amr

Unit (6) Test (2)

1 Listen and answer the questions:

1- Amira went to Sharm El-Sheikh on vacation. 2- She visited it on the last day.

3- Adam felt sick. 4- They tried snorkeling.

Read and complete the text:

1- traffic 2- paths 3- tram 4- places

3 Read and answer:

1- Cairo 2- vacation

3- They usually go in the summer to enjoy

its blue sea and sunny weather.

4- Omar's cousins.

G Choose the correct answer:

1- anybody 2- nothing 3- have 4- everybody

1 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1) What do you know about Alexandria?
- 2) Burj Khalifa has lots of glass windows.

Write a paragraph: "Khan El-Khalili"

There are lots of famous places in Egypt. One of these places is Khan El-Khalili, It's a famous market in Cairo, It's full of different stores that sell different things. Lots of tourists go to Khan El-Khalili to buy souvenirs and artifacts. Egyptians also go to Khan El-Khalili to enjoy shopping there. I think everybody who visits Cairo should come to this market!

Revision Unit (7)

Read and complete the text:

1-fair

2- officers

3- man 4 most powerful

Read and complete the dialogue:

2- bedtime 3- relax 4- meal 1- tired

3 Read and complete the text:

1- Earth 2- full 3- clocks 4- sleep

Read and complete the text:

1- healthy 2- sodas 3- exercise 4- online

S Read and complete the text:

1- tides 2- high 3- low 4- shallow

Read and complete the text:

1- safe

2- compass

3- hiking

4- comfortable

Read and complete the text:

2- listen 3- should 1- Find

5- should 4- feel

6- don't use 9-should

7- shouldn't 8- has 10- are

11- should 12- don't sleep

Choose the correct answer:

1- so that 2- to 3- so that

5- to 6- so that 4- you will have 8- so that 9- to 10- so that 7- feel

Put the words in the correct order:

- 1) Marwan went to bed at the usual time.
- 2) Wear sunglasses to protect your eyes.
- 3) A full moon changes our body clocks.
- 4) The sun makes the rooms hot.

- 5) Do you read books at bedtime?
- 6) We like walking along the coast.
- 7) I always have a shower in the morning.
- 8) Would you like to go swimming?
- 9) Don't use tablets close to bedtime.
- 10) I live near the sea with my family.
- 11) What time do you go to bed?
- 12) We should sleep for eight hours a night.
- 13) You should drink water every day.
- 14) If you eat fruits, you will feel better
- 15) You should exercise for one hour per day.

Write an email:

From: hani@yahoo.com

To: fady@school.com Subject: Tips for sleep

Dear Fady,

How are you and your family? I'm writing to tell you some tips for how to sleep well. First, if you don't feel sleepy at bedtime, have a shower or bath. This will help your body and muscles to relax. Tip number two: If you need to go to sleep soon, don't use phones or tablets close to bedtime. Another tip: Don't eat a big meal close to bedtime. If you want to feel sleepy, read a good book at bedtime. Don't go to bed late. That's all. Please write to me and tell me about your sleep.

See you soon

Hani

Unit (7) Test (3)

U Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- If you want to feel sleepy, read a good book at bedtime.
- 2- Around 10 pm is great.
- 3- Your bedroom should be dark when you
- 4- Don't listen to loud music in bed.

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- awake 2- moon 3- bright 4- sleepy

Read and answer:

2- after 3- Machines and computers help people now.

4- Because they don't get much exercise and they drive to work or catch a train, bus or taxi.

Choose the correct answer:

1- should 2- don't eat

- 3- shouldn't 4- so that
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1) What helps you to get to sleep?
- 2) The moon moves around the earth.
- Write a paragraph:
 "Our schools"

Schools are very important to our future. We learn many subjects at school. We read, write, and ask and answer at school. We also do sports at school. We exercise and have fun. We also make new friends and meet our old friends at school. Teachers help us a lot to make us clever and happy at school. We spend much time daily inside this building, so it means a lot to us.

Revision Unit (8)

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- teacher

2- needs

3- excited

4- community

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- nocturnal 2- dark 3- eyes 4- sense
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- planet 2- repair 3- volunteers 4- skills
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- pollution

2- lights

3- darkness

4- Predators

- S Read and complete the text:
- 1-stuck 2- bite 3- careful 4- charity
- 6 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- won't 2- will 3- can
- 4- come 5- Can 6- boil 7- Will
- 7 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1) Can I borrow your bike, please?
- 2) There are lots of lights in the cities.
- 3) I'll help you clean the kitchen.
- 4) Nocturnal animals have a very good sense of hearing.
- 5) The rain water damaged the library yesterday.
- 6) Plastic pollution causes big problems in the sea.
- 7) Can you make food for the party?
- 8) Concrete and buildings can absorb heat.
- 9) What do you hear at a concert?

- 10) The fennec fox is a nocturnal animal.
- 11) They were playing on the beach.
- 12) She saw a strange thing in the sea.
- 13) We've found a turtle on the beach.
- 14) What problems do nocturnal animals have?
- 15) Donkeys and camels are diurnal animals.
- 16) We need to stop plastic pollution.
- 7 Write a paragraph:

"How to get ready for the final exams"

Exams are very near, so I should get ready for the final exams well. Nowadays, I revise all subjects. I've made a timetable. I also ask my teachers' help. I ask them any difficult questions I find while studying. I don't waste my time. I hope to satisfy my parents and achieve my goals this year.

Unit (8) Test (4)

1 Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- Reem and Talia were playing on the beach with their parents.
- 2- Reem saw something strange in the sea.
- 3- They could see a small head and something hard. It was a turtle.
- 4- They called a charity which rescues turtles and saved the turtle.
- 2 Read and complete the text:
- 1- light 2- artificial 3- plastic 4- disappear
- 3 Read and answer:
- 1- slower than 2- lost
- 3- The rabbit asked the tortoise to have a race to the river.
- 4- Because the tortoise didn't stop and it slowly passed the sleeping rabbit.
- 5 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- amazing 2- won't 3- won't 4- Can
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1) You need to be careful with wild animals.
- 2) Who helps people in your community?
- Write an email:

From: ziad@school.net

To: ehab@gmail.com

Subject: My plans for the next vacation Dear Ehab.

How are you and your family? I'm writing to tell you about my plans for the next summer vacation. My family and I think to spend it in Hurghada. It's a beautiful city by the Red Sea. We will enjoy swimming, surfing and snorkeling a lot. We also want to spend some of the vacation on my grandpa's farm. It's near Tanta. We feel very happy, healthy and fresh every time we go there.

That's all. Please write to me and tell me about your plans for the next summer vacation.

See you soon

Ziad



1 Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- They went to visit his cousins.
- 2- Ali's dad drove the car to the city.
- 3- They arrived in the evening.
- 4- They showed them beautiful museums.

Read and complete the text:

1- sports 2- team 3- strong 4- sunscreen

3 Read and answer:

- 1- October 2- hot 3- It was hot in October.
- 4- They saw parrots, pandas, kangaroos, lions and penguins. Sama liked the penguins very much.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- going 2- watching 3- than 4- something

6 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Did you catch anything today, Samy?
- 2- Ancient Egyptians made beautiful houses.

Write a paragraph:

The Beach

Going to the beach is my most favorite thing. I like to go to the beach when it is quiet, and when the weather is not sunny. I usually go to the beach with my family. We go early in the morning, have our breakfast in the early morning, and then I swim for a while. In the afternoon we play volleyball together on the beach. After that we have lunch. After having lunch; we swim for an hour and take a shower to go back home. I like going to the beach a lot.

Exam (2)

1 Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- We are studying the Ancient Egyptians history. 2- Almost everyone used the river for transportation.
- 3- They moved their goods in different kinds of boats and ships. 4- The Ancient Egyptians were active and clever.

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- club 2- Why 3- sport 4- on

3 Read and answer:

- 1- Inside 2- beginning
- 3- By trying to find a healthy balance of play and exercise, healthy food, water, social time, and good sleep.
- 4- We feel strong, happy and have good relationships.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- put 2- more 3- travelling 4- the tallest

6 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Mona like playing sports after school.
- 2- Do you like onions on your burger?

Write a paragraph:

My Favorite hobby

My favorite hobby is a mix of sports, arts and crafts, and going on picnics. I love playing different sports like soccer and basketball with my friends. It keeps me active and healthy. When I'm not playing sports, I enjoy arts and crafts. I like making colorful drawings and creating fun projects with paper and glue. On weekends, my family and I often go on picnics. We find a nice spot in the park, play games, and enjoy delicious food. All these activities make my free time exciting and fun!

Exam (3)

1 Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- He wanted to sell his prized beans.
- 2- The donkey said this.
- 3- Gabi had no idea his donkey could fly.
- 4- An ibis perched on a branch overhead watched with curious eyes.

Read and complete the text:

1- village 2- worried 3- repair 4- life

- 3 Read and answer:
- 1- hiking 2- evening
- 3- His family goes camping in the Siwa Oasis in the Western Desert.
- 4- As she's only four!
- Choose the correct answer:
- 1- ask 2- want 3- should 4- make
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Drink lots of water to stay healthy.
- 2- How can you help other people?
- Write a paragraph:

Good Sleeping Tips

Here are some tips for how to sleep well. First, if you don't feel sleepy at bedtime, have a shower or bath. This will help your body and muscles to relax. When you go to bed, you shouldn't have your electronic devices with you. Don't eat a big meal close to bedtime. And finally, your bedroom should be dark when you sleep.

Exam (4)

- 1 Listen and answer the questions:
- 1- Amir is in grade five.
- 2- Traveling is his favorite hobby.
- 3- Painting and drawing pictures.
- 4- Fares is creative.
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- fun 2- National 3- sick 4- knee
- 3 Read and answer:
- 1- busy 2- outside
- 3- The text is about Amira's family.
- 4- Mom doesn't like swimming and always reads a book at the beach.
 - S Choose the correct answer:
- 1- going 2- doesn't 3- anything 4- see
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Would you like to go camping?
- 2- I had a nice vacation with my family.
- Write a paragraph:

My Favorite Hobbies and Sports
Hi. I'm Mohamed and I like doing
sports. Doing sports is my favorite hobby.

So I often go to the sports center. The sports center is my favorite place. I meet my friends there. We usually play volleyball games. We have a coach who trains us. He tells us how to keep fit. I like sports and I like the sports center.

Exam (5)

- Listen and answer the questions:
- 1- He lived with his parents on a farm near the Nile.
 2- He helped his father look after his animals.
- 3- He helped his mother in the house.
- 4- They played a board game called Senet.
- 2 Read and complete the dialogue:
- 1- best 2- healthy 3- time 4- home
- 3 Read and answer:
- 1- mountains 2- backpack
- 3- Mona tried to light the fire but she couldn't.
- 4- It is a rough path across the desert.
- 5 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- don't 2- shouldn't 3- does 4- loves
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- Do you like listening to music?
- 2- Many sports are popular in my country.
- Write a paragraph:

My favorite sports and hobbies
I spend my free time doing different things. I play football most of the time. My sister has taught me how to do some arts and crafts, so I like origami. Sometimes we have a picnic in a public park near our house. And last winter, I went camping with my friends in the desert. I enjoy my hobbies a lot.

Exam (6)

- Listen and answer the questions:
- 1- Camping is his favorite activity.
- 2- He likes summer.
- 3- In the mountainous areas, the weather can change very fast.
- 4- He should learn how to put up a tent.
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- sun 2- bushes 3- lake 4- boat

Read and answer:

1- tourists 2- south

3- It refers to Brighton city. 4- It's a small city and about 200.000 people live there.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- watching 2- more 3- Everyone 4- to play

1 Put the words in the correct order:

- 1- Don't eat a big meal close to bedtime.
- 2- How do you spend your free time?

Write a paragraph:

My free time

In my free time, I love to do different activities! I often read exciting books that take me to new worlds. Sometimes, I play football with my friends at the park, where we laugh and have fun. I also enjoy drawing and painting, letting my imagination run free. On quiet days, I watch movies or bake tasty cakes with my family.

Exam (7)

1 Listen and answer the questions:

1- The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities.

2- Athletes with disabilities can participate in the paralympic.

3- The Paralympic Games take place every four years.

4- Many Egyptian Paralympic athletes won many gold, silver, and bronze medals.

2 Read and complete the text:

1- know 2- economy 3- flooded 4- crops

3 Read and answer:

1- disappear 2- the day

3- It refers to nocturnal animals.

4- Nocturnal animals have strong sense of hearing to help them move at night.

S Choose the correct answer:

1- have 2- more 3- drink 4- anything

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- What does Laila ask Sara to do?

2- My grandma used to be a teacher.

Write a paragraph:

Healthy habits

It's important to have balance in your life. You should exercise for one hour per day. You should eat healthy foods like vegetables and fruits. Avoid unhealthy fast food and too many sweets. Spending some time with friends and family is important for your happiness. And try to avoid using phones too much. Don't use electronic devices at bedtime.

Exam (8)

1 Listen and answer the questions:

1- His favorite place is the sports center.

2- It is in his city.

3- Everybody goes to the sports center on Friday night. 4- they can have fun and do whatever they want.

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- shopping 2- Friday 3- clothes 4- online

2- five

3 Read and answer:

1- litter

3- She loves going to the park.

4- Dad plays football with my brother Waleed.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- somebody 2- anything 3- to take

4- anybody

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- The children used a red flag to stop the train.

2- Do you need anything from the mall?

Write a paragraph:

The Pyramids

The Pyramids in Giza are huge and famous structures that attract many tourists from around the world. Made of huge stones, these amazing buildings were built thousands of years ago as tombs for pharaohs. People love to take photos in front of the pyramids to remember their holidays. Each pyramid tells a story about ancient Egypt and its rich history.

Exam (9)

Listen and answer the questions:

1- He went to Cairo.

2- She felt sick on their boat trip.



- 3- Mom bought five big fish:
- 4- Amr was happy because he likes fish.
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- tired 2- well 3- best 4- phones
- 3 Read and answer:
- 1- shining 2- sea
- 3- The full moon is very bright, so our body clocks think it's still day time.
- 4- He went to bed at ten o'clock as usual.
- Choose the correct answer:
- 1- writing 2- is 3- less popular 4- search
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- I usually put on sunscreen before
 sleeping.
 2- There are not many
 people in the countryside.
- Write a paragraph:

My favorite sport

My favorite sport is football! I play for a club with my friends, and we practice twice a week. I love running on the field, passing the ball, and scoring goals. It feels great to work as a team and help each other out. Playing football keeps us active and helps us be strong, making every game even more exciting!

Exam (10)

- Usten and answer the questions:
- 1- He is about 50 years old now.
- 2- He used to be really good at football.
- 3- He teaches the local children.
- 4- They practice once or two times a week.
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- village 2- worried 3- repair 4- life
- 3 Read and answer:
- 1- A man and woman 2- safety
- 3- Turtles aren't dangerous animals.
- 4- He took a photo of that beautiful animal.
- 5 Choose the correct answer:
- 1- too 2- play 3- help 4- feel
- Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- We all live in a community.
- 3- Drink lots of water to keep yourself healthy.

Write a paragraph:

Pollution is a big problem that affects our environment. When people throw garbage on the ground instead of using bins, it harms trees and plants. This makes it hard for them to grow and produce clean air. We need to take care of our planet by reducing pollution. By recycling and keeping our surroundings clean, we can help protect nature for everyone!

Exam (11)

- 1 Listen and answer the questions:
- 1- He likes travelling with his family.
- 2- He lives on a ship in the summer.
- 3- He can speak English and French.
- 4- Because he is very kind and brave.
- 2 Read and complete the text:
- 1- excited 2- fruit 3- breakfast 4- local
- 3 Read and answer:
- 1- water 2- carefully
- 3- We need it for drinking, washing, cooking, watering the fields and getting electricity.
- 4- Some of them use too much water to wash their cars. Others leave the taps open, day and night.
- S Choose the correct answer:
- 1- play 2- much 3- do 4- most
- 6 Put the words in the correct order:
- 1- The moon goes around the Earth.
- 2- What's your favorite place to sleep?
- Write a paragraph:

Going camping

I went camping with my family last weekend in Saint Catherine in South Sinai. It's an amazing place and the mountains are very high. We set up our tents and cooked some meat and vegetables on the campfire. We went hiking after that, and I was very tired, but I enjoyed it very much. It was an awesome experience.